

OPIC ENGLISH TEAM

MASTER OPIC

INTERMEDIATE TO ADVANCED



OPIC là gì?

Opic Proficiency Interview Computer (OPIC) là bài Bài thi đánh giá khả năng nói Tiếng Anh trên máy tính. Bài thi được ghi lại và gửi đến ACTFL (Hội đồng giảng dạy ngoại ngữ Hoa Kỳ) để tiến hành chấm điểm.

Hiện tại, các tập đoàn lớn ở Hàn Quốc như SAMSUNG, LG, CITI, HSBC yêu cầu cần điểm OPIC khi tuyển dụng ứng viên mới cũng như là điều kiện để xét thăng tiến hàng năm.

1. Cấu trúc bài thi OPIC

Bài thi OPIC không chỉ đánh giá năng lực của bạn dựa trên vốn từ vựng và ngữ pháp mà còn đánh giá cả khả năng diễn đạt (ngữ điệu, phát âm, trình bày logic, tính lưu loát, trôi chảy...) trong các tình huống giao tiếp cụ thể. Bài thi được diễn ra trong 60 phút, chia làm 2 phần:

❖ PHẦN ĐỊNH HƯỚNG (15 ~ 20 phút)

Diễn ra trong khoảng 20 phút, gồm các mục:

+ **Câu hỏi khảo sát** (dựa vào câu trả lời ở các câu hỏi mỗi người sẽ có 1 bộ đề thi khác nhau, phần này rất quan trọng vì nếu không nắm được kỹ năng chọn sẽ rất khó để hoàn thành bài thi nói)

+ **Phần tự đánh giá năng lực bản thân**. Phần này sẽ quyết định mức độ khó dễ của câu hỏi cũng như cấp độ tương ứng mà bạn có thể đạt được. Hiện có 6 mức tương đương với các cấp độ từ NM → AL. Chủ yếu hiện tại mọi người thi nhiều ở trình độ IM và IH (tức là mức 4 và 5).

+ **Phần giới thiệu khái quát về khung đề**

+ **Thi thử câu hỏi mẫu** (không tính điểm)

❖ BÀI THI CHÍNH (40 phút)

Diễn ra trong khoảng 40 phút, số lượng câu hỏi từ 12 ~ 15 câu, mỗi câu sẽ có thời lượng trả lời được quy định khác nhau, khoảng từ 1' ~ 2'30s.

Hình thức và nội dung chủ yếu xuất hiện trong đề như sau:

❖ **Câu 1:** Tự giới thiệu bản thân (câu này luôn luôn có cho dù bạn chọn cấp độ nào)

❖ **Câu 2 ~ 4:** 3 câu hỏi 1 combo (cùng 1 chủ đề nhưng các câu hỏi sẽ khác nhau)

- Ví dụ với chủ đề về Nơi ở:

+ Câu 2: Mô tả về căn nhà bạn đang ở (tổng quát)

+ Câu 3: Mô tả về nội thất bên trong, nhà có những đồ gia dụng gì, nếu hư ai sửa?...

+ Câu 4: Kể lại quá trình sửa một đồ vật nào đó trong nhà của bạn.

- ❖ **Câu 5 ~ 7:** 3 câu hỏi 1 combo
- ❖ **Câu 8 ~ 10:** 3 câu hỏi 1 combo
 - Các câu hỏi thường xuất hiện: mô tả, mô tả quá trình, kinh nghiệm, việc đáng nhớ, so sánh, đối chiếu...
- ❖ **Câu 11 ~ 12:** (Role play), bạn sẽ nhập vai vào 1 nhân vật trong 1 tình huống được cho sẵn để xử lý, giải quyết tình huống đó.
- ❖ **Câu 13 ~ 15:** dạng như câu hỏi nâng cao, phân loại. Thường sẽ là câu hỏi với nội dung không liên quan gì đến những gì bạn đã chọn ở phần khảo sát.

2. Tiêu chí đánh giá và thang điểm bài thi OPIc

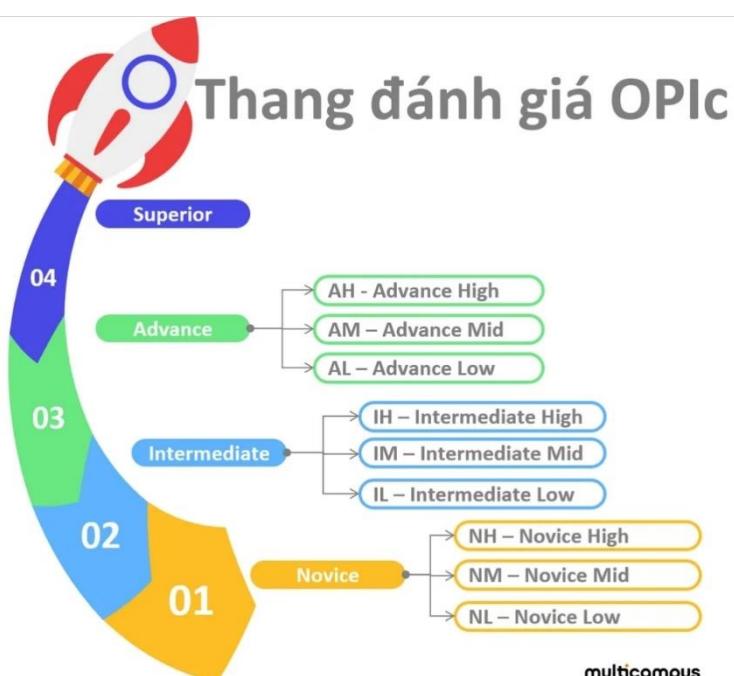
❖ **Tiêu chí đánh giá** (5 tiêu chí)

1. *Chức năng/Nhiệm vụ* : Khả năng trả lời câu hỏi kịp thời
2. *Loại văn bản*: Khả năng sử dụng từ vựng để đưa ra câu trả lời một cách nhất quán
3. *Nội dung/Bối cảnh*: Có khả năng trả lời rõ ràng câu hỏi mà vẫn đi đúng chủ đề.
4. *Tính dễ hiểu*: Khả năng đưa ra câu trả lời một cách logic (Mở bài, Thân bài, Kết luận)
5. *Kiểm soát ngôn ngữ*: Khả năng liên quan đến phát âm (ngữ điệu, trọng âm, nhịp điệu, tốc độ), ngữ pháp (dùng đúng thì, số nhiều, giới từ), từ vựng.

❖ **Thang điểm bài thi OPIc** (3 cấp độ chính)

- *Sơ cấp* (Novice High/Mid/Low)
- *Trung cấp* (Intermediate High/Mid/Low)
- *Cao cấp* (Advanced Low)

Điểm cao nhất trong bài kiểm tra OPIc là Advanced Low.



CÁCH CHỌN SURVEY TRONG BÀI THI OPIC

NƠI LÀM VIỆC

- **Cách 1:** KHÔNG có kinh nghiệm làm việc / Hiện tại KHÔNG làm việc.

Cách này phù hợp với các bạn thi IL, IM, IH hoặc các bạn nắm được ít từ vựng liên quan đến công việc của bản thân

- **Cách 2:** Kinh doanh, công ty / Hiện tại CÓ làm việc, Trên 2 tháng, KHÔNG PHẢI Quản lý, giám đốc

Khuyến khích lựa chọn phương án này với những bạn muốn thi AL hoặc các bạn nắm được nhiều từ vựng liên quan đến công việc của bản thân, hoặc đơn giản là các bạn yêu thích chủ đề này.

HỌC TẬP

- Hiện tại KHÔNG đi học
- Trình độ học vấn Cao học hoặc Đại học

NƠI SỐNG

- Tôi sống với gia đình trong một căn nhà hoặc một căn hộ

CHỌN CẤP ĐỘ KHÓ

- Chọn mức 3 hoặc 4 với các bạn muốn thi IL, IM
- Chọn mức 5 hoặc 6 với các bạn muốn thi IH
- Chọn mức 6 với các bạn muốn thi AL

SINH HOẠT/ THỂ THAO/ DU LỊCH

Các chủ đề thường được chọn bao gồm:

- **Đi xem phim**
- **Đi nghe ca nhạc**
- **Đi chơi công viên**
- **Đi chơi ở biển**
- **Nghe nhạc**
- **Đi xe đạp**
- **Chạy bộ chậm**
- **Đi bộ**
- **Không chơi thể theo**
- **Nghỉ mát tại nhà**
- **Đi nghỉ mát trong nước**

Đây là các chủ đề mà các bạn dễ dàng tìm được gói câu hỏi tham khảo để chuẩn bị trước.

Các bạn chọn **tối thiểu 6 đáp án** trong phần này.

Ngoài ra với các bạn có khả năng nói tốt và tự tin nói các chủ đề khác thì hoàn toàn có thể chọn nhiều hơn các mục trên.

ĐỀ TÀI HỨNG THÚ THẢO LUẬN

- Nơi làm việc toàn cầu
- Văn hoá và xã hội
- Giao tiếp, phương tiện liên lạc

3. Lộ trình ôn luyện OPIc English trong 3 tháng

❖ 30 ngày đầu tiên

- Nên tăng tiên quyết để đạt được điểm cao trong bài thi OPIc Speaking là phát âm.

Mình biết nhiều bạn sẽ rất vội nên coi nhẹ bước này và tiến hành ôn luyện theo chủ đề luôn.

Tuy nhiên như xây một ngôi nhà thì “nền móng” cần phải vững chắc thì mới được.

- Nhóm tác giả khuyên bạn nên ưu tiên 1 tháng đầu luyện phát âm

+ Với nhóm bạn có khả năng tự học và kỹ luật cao: bạn có thể tham khảo link youtube bên dưới để luyện tập hàng ngày



https://m.youtube.com/playlist?list=PLxc4V8jyRl2efh1E027Ca46ir_SLdy0gJ

+ Với nhóm bạn cần môi trường học thì bạn nên đăng ký 1 lớp tiếng Anh giao tiếp cơ bản tại khu vực mình sinh sống để nâng cao khả năng phát âm

❖ 10 ngày sau tiếp

- Lúc này bạn đã có khả năng phát âm các âm cơ bản và các câu đơn giản. Bước tiếp theo là luyện về nói âm, trọng âm và ngữ điệu. Những yếu tố này sẽ giúp bạn được điểm cao hơn trong bài thi nói tiếng Anh.

❖ 50 ngày sau tiếp

- Lúc này là lúc sử dụng giáo trình “**Master OPIc**” bên mình biên soạn để ôn luyện.

- Đọc to 3 lần theo file audio mẫu và tiến hành ghi âm

4. Hướng dẫn dùng sách Master OPIc

Giáo trình này có tổng cộng 8 chương. Mỗi chương đều đưa ra câu hỏi và câu trả lời mẫu cho từ 6-11 chủ đề. Trong mỗi chủ đề sẽ tiến hành phân tích lần lượt theo các phần như dưới đây:

- ❖ **Topic & Question** (*Câu hỏi theo các dạng chủ đề*)
- ❖ **Development Ideas** (*Điều chỉnh từ khóa trả lời câu hỏi theo dạng mở bài – thân bài – kết bài*)
- ❖ **Sample Answer** (*Câu trả lời ví dụ*)
- ❖ **Vocabulary & Idioms and Expression** (*Sắp xếp các từ và thành ngữ chính*)
- ❖ **Useful Expression** (*Diễn tả cách sử dụng*)
- ❖ **Points of Discussion** (*Câu hỏi bổ sung liên quan đến chủ đề / Role Play*)
- ❖ **Grammar Pointer** (*Giải thích các nội dung ngữ pháp chủ yếu*)

INDEX

Chapter 1 : Introduction	
Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Family	Present simple
Topic 2. Strengths and weaknesses	Coordinating ConjunctionsCompound Sentences
Topic 3. Place where you live	Comparative Adjectives
Topic 4. House	Most and Most of
Topic 5. Best friend	Uses of Enough
Topic 6. Neighbors	Speak, Talk, Say and Tell
Topic 7. Pet	Appositives
Topic 8. Role play: Job interview	Number + Noun Modifiers

Chapter 2 : Company	
Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Description of company	Infinitives
Topic 2. Normal workday	Subordinating Conjunctions
Topic 3. Colleague or boss	Adjectives or Adverbs
Topic 4. Office	Prepositions of Place—at, in, on
Topic 5. Dress code	Gerunds Gerunds vs. Infinitives
Topic 6. Going to the office	Prepositions of Time—at, in, on
Topic 7. Lunch	Transitional Words and Phrases showing contrast
Topic 8. Difficult situation at work	Past Simple vs. Past Continuous
Topic 9. Achievement	Past Simple vs. Present Perfect
Topic 10. Role play: Informing client about vacation	Tenses to Express Future Time
Topic 11. Role play: Introducing a new product to clients	Superlative Adjectives

Chapter 3 : School	
Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. School and Major	Differences in meaning of OTHER, ANOTHER and OTHERS.
Topic 2. Favorite subject	Relative Pronouns
Topic 3. Teacher you respect the most	Who vs. Whom
Topic 4. The most memorable event during your school life	Active Voice and Passive Voice

Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 5. Part-time job	Ending a sentence with a preposition
Topic 6. Volunteer work	First conditional
Topic 7. Normal school day	Adverbs of Frequency and their position in the sentence
Topic 8. Role Play: Inquiring about TOEIC class	Embedded Questions

Chapter 4 : Daily Life

Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Living Arrangement	Present Perfect Simple and Continuous
Topic 2. Spending time after work or school	Because, As, Since, For
Topic 3. Weekends	Objects acting as subject of the sentence
Topic 4. Shopping mall	Uses of Articles
Topic 5. Parks	Count Nouns and Non-count Nouns
Topic 6. Family Ceremony	Inverted Sentences
Topic 7. When your parents loved you the most?	Participles
Topic 8. Stress	Expressing Obligations and Responsibilities: Must and Have to
Topic 9. Role Play: Inquiring about sale	All, Every, Each

Chapter 5 : Hobbies

Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Hobbies	Emphatic Forms of Verbs
Topic 2. TV program	Nouns which can be verbs
Topic 3. Books	Position of the different kinds of adverbs in sentences
Topic 4. Computer games	Too, So, Very
Topic 5. Cooking	Parallelism
Topic 6. Music	Whenever vs. When
Topic 7. Singing	Subject-verb agreement in relative clauses
Topic 8. Musical instrument	Usage of Make
Topic 9. Online shopping	Among and Between
Topic 10. Role Play: Inquiring about the party	Adjectives which cannot be used for people
Topic 11: Role Play: Inquiring about concert tickets	Hardly, Barely, Scarcely

Chapter 6 : Health and Sports	
Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Things you do to stay healthy	Usage of Keep
Topic 2. Going to the gym	Do, Go, Play
Topic 3. Health problems	Adverbial Time Clauses
Topic 4. Most recent experience in seeing a doctor or dentist	Usage of Get
Topic 5. Watching professional sports	Uses of OF
Topic 6. Soccer	-Able Suffix
Topic 7. Traditional sport or Game	Correlative Conjunctions
Topic 8. Swimming	As, Like

Chapter 7 : Vacation and Trips	
Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Overseas Trip	Seem
Topic 2. Favorite Trip	Stative Verbs and Dynamic Verbs
Topic 3. Most memorable experience during vacation	Seat & Sit, Sit in, Sit on
Topic 4. Difficult situation encountered during trip	Verb + Adjective
Topic 5. Camping	Pretty, Quite, Fairly, Rather
Topic 6. Domestic business trip	Provide
Topic 7. Role Play: Booking a hotel	

Chapter 8 : Others	
Topics	Grammar Pointer
Topic 1. Unpleasant Incident in a Public Place	Could Have
Topic 2. Changes in culture	
Topic 3. Financial portfolio	Adverbs of Certainty
Topic 4. Losing something	Propose, Suggest, Recommend
Topic 5. Environment issues	
Topic 6. Smart phone	Compound Words
Topic 7. Most recent and biggest issue in Korea	Prefixes: Counter/ Corp/ Pro/ Sus
Topic 8. Unforgettable childhood memory	See, Look and Watch
Topic 9. Role Play: Complaining to a neighbor	Apologizing

Chapter

1

Introduction

-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
- Topic 1. Family
- Topic 2. Strengths and weaknesses
- Topic 3. Place where you live
- Topic 4. House
- Topic 5. Best friend
- Topic 6. Neighbors
- Topic 7. Pet
- Topic 8. Role play: Job interview

Topic 1

Tell me a little bit about your family.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Kind of family
	Introduction of the members of the family
Body	Profile and description of each family members
Conclusion	Feelings towards family members

I belong to an *extended family* of nine. It includes my **paternal** grandparents, parents, me and my four younger **siblings**. My grandparents are both in their early 70s. *Despite* being old, they still work hard. My parents are both in their *mid-40s*. My father *earns a living* through driving a public utility vehicle. He is very kind, **compassionate** and supportive. My mother is a **tough** working mom. *As a matter of fact*, she manages our small family business. My four **siblings** are still studying. Being the eldest, I have **obliged** myself to support them whenever they need me and whenever I can. I always consider my family as one of the most important things in my life. I may not have a perfect one, but I love them *all the same*.

Vocabulary:

Paternal:	belonging to or inherited from one's father
Siblings:	brothers or sisters
Compassionate :	a deep awareness of and sympathy for another's suffering
Tough:	strong and able to deal with difficult situations or pain
Oblige:	to make it necessary for someone to do something

Idioms and Expressions:

As a matter of fact	used when you are going to give more details about something
Earn a living	to make money in order to provide for personal and family expenses
All the same	used for saying that it makes no difference to someone whether one thing happens or another thing happens

Useful Expressions

- I belong to an **extended** family of nine.
 - ❖ **Extended family:** a family unit which includes grandmothers, grandfathers, aunts and uncles, etc. in addition to parents and children

☆ Their *extended family* includes a grandmother and widowed aunt.

☆ I only see my *extended family* during Christmas.

Other related expressions:

- ❖ **Nuclear family:** traditional family that is composed of mother, father and children
- ❖ **Single-Parent family:** a family where one of the parents is no longer part of the family unit, possibly due to death or divorce

- **Despite** being old, they still work hard.

- ❖ **Despite:** even though

☆ She had difficulty communicating in French *despite* all her years of study.

☆ We lost the game *despite* the fact that we practiced all week.

☆ *Despite* not having an umbrella, I walked home in the rain.

- My parents are both in their *mid-40s*.

- ❖ **Mid:** the middle of

☆ We met in *mid-September*.

☆ The *mid-1960's* were a turning point in sports car design.

- My father **earns a living** through driving a public utility vehicle.

- ❖ **Earn a living :** to make money in order to provide for personal and family expenses

☆ We need to get a good job to *earn a decent living*.

☆ There are a lot of ways to *earn a living*. Don't just sit there and wait for nothing.

☆ Peter is a journalist. He *earns a living* through writing news articles.

- **As a matter of fact**, she manages our small family business.
- ❖ **As a matter of fact** : used when you are going to give more details about something

☆ I haven't been here long. *As a matter of fact*, I just got off the plane yesterday.

☆ *As a matter of fact*, John came into the room while you were talking about him.

- I may not have a perfect one, but I love them **all the same**.
- ❖ **All the same**: used for saying that it makes no difference to someone whether one thing happens or another thing happens

☆ Granted that it is dangerous, *all the same* I still want to go.

☆ It's *all the same* to me whether we win or lose.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I'd like to know about the best memory you have of your family doing something together.
- 2) Who among the members of your family do you see more often? Why do you think this is the case?
- 3) Describe a typical family unit and the importance of family in your country.

Grammar Pointer

The present simple is the most basic tense in the English language. It has several uses.

Use 1: Permanent Situations

Use the Present Simple to talk about situations in life that last a relatively long time.

- ☆ I **belong** to an extended family of nine.
- ☆ My father **earns** a living through driving a public utility vehicle.
- ☆ She **manages** our small family business.

Use 2: Habits and Routines

We also use this tense to describe actions that happen frequently.

- ☆ We **leave** for work at 6:30 every morning.
- ☆ My husband **watches** TV in the evening.
- ☆ I **play** football on Saturdays.

Use 3: Facts, Generalizations and Universal Truths

We use the Present Simple to talk about universal truths (for example, laws of nature) or things we believe are, or are not, true. It is also used to generalize about something or somebody.

- ☆ Water **boils** at 100 degrees Celsius.
- ☆ The Earth **goes** around the Sun.
- ☆ The sun **rises** in the east.

Use 4: Events Certain to Happen

Use the Present Simple when an event is certain to happen in the future.

- ☆ My grandmother **turns** 100 years old this July.
- ☆ The plane **leaves** at 5:00 tomorrow morning.
- ☆ Christmas Day **falls** on a Sunday this year.

Use 5: State Verbs

We use the present simple to talk about our thoughts and feelings.

☆ I **love** them all the same.

☆ I **think** you are wrong.

☆ She **likes** it in Germany.

FORMS OF THE PRESENT SIMPLE

Affirmative			
Subject	Verb		
I	work	so well.	
You			
We/ They			
He/ She/ It	works		

Negative			
Subject	Auxiliary Verb	Verb	
I	do not	work	so well.
You			
We/ They			
He/ She/ It	does not	work	

Interrogative			
Question Word	Auxiliary Verb	Subject	Main Verb
How	do	I	work?
		you	
		we/they	
	does	he/ she/ it	

IMPORTANT!

1) Not using the -s form with singular subjects:

Incorrect: Harry like Korean food.

Correct: Harry likes Korean food.

2) Using the simple present tense when another tense is required.

Incorrect: Last night, I watch television for two hours.

Correct: Last night, I watched television for two hours.

3) Using an auxiliary verb when not needed

Incorrect: I'm always study English.

Correct: I always study English.

Topic 2

Tell me about your strong points and weak points.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General description of strong and weak points
Body	Detailed explanation of your strength
	How the strength helps you
	Detailed explanation of your weakness
	Measures done to overcome weakness
Conclusion	Realization about strong points and weak points

I consider my positive attitude as my strong point, while my *easily-distracted* mind is my *Achilles' heel*. With regard to my strength, I have always liked looking at the **optimistic** side of things. There were times when I failed in achieving my **aspirations** in life, but I easily *got over* them. Instead of **lamenting** about my failures, I learn from them. I know these failures will make me stronger and will help me develop into a better person. Besides, a positive attitude is **contagious**. About my weak point, I cannot *cope with distractions*. For example, whenever I work on something, I must be away from **temptations**—like music, internet and TV. Otherwise, I cannot stay focused. I **overcome** this weakness by fixing my priorities and **isolating** myself in a quiet room, allowing me to finish the work for the day. I believe that to grow as a person, we must identify our own strengths to **conquer** our weakness.

Vocabulary:

Optimistic	hopeful and confident about the future
Aspiration	a hope or ambition of achieving something
Lamenting	vocally expressing grief, regret, sorrow or resembling such expression
Contagious	spreading or tending to spread from one to another
Compliment	something nice that you say to praise someone
Distraction	an obstacle to attention
Temptation	the desire to have or do something that you know you should avoid
Overcome	to succeed in dealing with or controlling a problem
Isolate	to keep someone in a place away from other people
Conquer	to gain control of a situation or emotion by making a great physical or mental effort

Idioms and Expressions:

Easily-distracted	having the attention diverted very easily; having short attention span
Achilles' heel	a weak feature that someone or something has that could cause failure or could be attacked
Get over something	to recover from something

Useful Expressions

- I consider my positive attitude as my strong point, while my **easily-distracted** mind is my **Achilles' heel**.
 - ❖ **Easily-distracted** : having the attention diverted very easily; having short attention span
 - ☆ His *easily-distracted* 11-year-old sister was too much to handle.
 - ☆ *Easily-distracted* students have difficulty following lectures.
 - ❖ **Achilles' heel:** a weakness or vulnerable point
 - ☆ His inability to accept his mistakes was his *Achilles' heel*.
 - ☆ Lack of product development has been the *Achilles' heel* of their company.
-
- **With regard to** my strength, I have always liked looking at the optimistic side of things.
 - ❖ **With regard to** : concerning a particular subject
 - ☆ *With regard* to the discussion about immigration, I'd like to hear your opinion.
 - ☆ I am writing to you *with regard* to your letter of 15 March.
-
- There were times when I failed in achieving my **aspirations** in life, but I easily **got over** them.
 - ❖ **Get over something:** to recover from something
 - ☆ It took him years to *get over* the shock of his wife dying.
 - ☆ In order to reach this high position in the company, he had to *get over* several problems in his personal life.

- **Instead of** lamenting about my failures, I learn from them.
- ❖ **Instead of:** suggests that one person, thing or action replaces another

- ☆ She wore a dress *instead of* slacks on our first meeting.
- ☆ *Instead of* ordering pizza, Alicia decided to cook something healthy for her children.

- **Besides**, a positive attitude is **contagious**.
- ❖ **Besides:** used as a way of starting a new statement and connecting it to the previous statement

- ☆ I don't want to go shopping. *Besides*, I haven't got any money.
- ☆ It's too late to invite any more people. *Besides*, you know how Tim hates parties.
- ❖ **Contagious:** spreading or tending to spread from one to another

- ☆ Her laughter is *contagious*.
- ☆ Your good mood will be highly *contagious*. Others will respond.

Other usage:

- ❖ **Contagious:** describes a disease that can be caught by touching someone with the disease or a piece of infected clothing
- ☆ The infection is highly *contagious*, so don't let anyone else use your towel.

- I cannot **cope with** distractions.
- ❖ **Cope with:** to deal successfully with a difficult situation or job

- ☆ How does one *cope with* death?
- ☆ I will try to *cope with* his rudeness.

- **Otherwise**, I cannot stay focused.
- ❖ **Otherwise:** used after an order or suggestion to show what the result will be if you do not follow that order or suggestion

- ☆ His father is not motivated by money, *otherwise* he would have quit a long time ago.
- ☆ I'd better write it down, *otherwise* I'll forget it.
- ☆ Phone home, *otherwise* your parents will start to worry.

- We must identify our own strengths to **conquer** our weakness.
- ❖ **Conquer:** to gain control of a situation or emotion by making a great physical or mental effort

☆ She was determined to *conquer* her fear of flying.

☆ He finally *conquered* his drug habit.

Other usage:

- ❖ **Conquer:** to take control or possession of foreign land, or a group of people, by force
- ☆ The English were *conquered* by the Normans in 1066.
- ❖ **Conquer:** to succeed in climbing a tall mountain
- ☆ The climbers later *conquered* six more peaks.

Points of Discussion

- 1) How does your strength or weakness affect you in living your life? Cite any experience about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Give one strong point that you would like to have or develop in the future and explain why you chose it.
- 3) I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. Your close friend has become lazy about his studies and as his friend, you are concerned. Tell your friend to overcome his weakness and indicate how and why he should do it.

Grammar Pointer

COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

**There were times when I failed in achieving my aspirations in life.
I easily got over them.**

Both sentences above are valid on their own, but they can be written so that they're obviously linked:

There were times when I failed in achieving my aspirations in life, *but* I easily got over them.

The sentence is joined by the coordinating conjunction *but*. A **coordinating conjunction**, also called a coordinator, links parts of a sentence. This could be two independent (main) clauses, two noun phrases, adjectives, or adverbials of equal importance.

Conjunction	Use	Sample Sentences	With Coordinating Conjunction
and	To express addition or combination	<i>I attended the meeting. + My friend attended the meeting.</i>	<i>My friend and I attended the meeting.</i>
but	To express a contrast	<i>We were tired. + We were happy.</i>	<i>We were tired but happy.</i>
nor	And not	<i>He didn't want help. + He didn't ask for it.</i>	<i>He didn't want help, nor did he ask for it.</i>
or	To express choice	<i>Would you like tea? + Would you like coffee?</i>	<i>Would you like tea or coffee?</i>
so	To show that the second idea is the result of the first	<i>She had to go. + She called a friend to drive her.</i>	<i>She had to go, so she called a friend to drive her.</i>
yet	Similar to but	<i>He had not known her long. + He felt very close to her.</i>	<i>He had not known her long, yet he felt very close to her.</i>
for	To introduce the reason for the preceding clause	<i>He couldn't go home. + He had no place to go.</i>	<i>He couldn't go home, for he had no place to go.</i>

COMPOUND SENTENCES

When you are speaking, it would be strange to only use short, simple sentences. Instead, try making some compound sentences.

A **compound sentence** consists of two or more complete ideas called *main clauses* or *independent clauses* joined by a coordinating conjunction.

For example, the sentences “*There were times when I failed in achieving my aspirations in life.*” and “*I easily got over them.*” are both **independent clauses** (a group of words made up of a subject and a predicate, and can stand alone in a sentence) which became a compound sentence after being joined by the conjunction **but**.

By putting the two sentences together and joining them with a conjunction, we can make a much more interesting compound sentence.

There were times I failed in achieving my aspirations in life, **but** I easily got over them.

Independent Clause (1)	Independent Clause (2)	Sentence joined by a conjunction
He can afford that luxury car.	He is rich.	He can afford that luxury car, for he is rich.
He is rich.	He is not happy.	He is rich, yet he is not happy.
I didn't greet her.	She doesn't want to talk to me anymore	I didn't greet her, so she doesn't want to talk to me anymore.

IMPORTANT!

Coordinating conjunctions are useful for connecting sentences, but compound sentences often are overused. While coordinating conjunctions can indicate some type of relationship between the two independent clauses in the sentence, they sometimes do not indicate much of a relationship.

The word "and," for example, only adds one independent clause to another, without indicating how the two parts of a sentence are logically related. Too many compound sentences that use "and" can weaken your response.

Topic 3

Tell me about where you live. Where is it located and what is it famous for? Describe your place with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Name of the place
	Duration of stay
Body	Reason for choosing that place
	Positive attributes of the place
Conclusion	Perception towards the city

I live in Suwon City, the capital of Gyeonggi-do in Korea. I moved to the city with my family ten years ago as I became in charge of a branch of my company. At first, it was difficult to get **accustomed** to this new area since we didn't know a lot of people here. Moreover, it was a little inconvenient as the city lacked certain facilities such as the subway. However, as time passed, I've come to love this city. There are many interesting places to see here *within easy driving distance*. What I like about this place is that it **harmonizes** the old and the modern. As you know, Suwon is famous for the **fortress** surrounding the city. As a matter of fact, it was **designated** by UNESCO as a World Heritage site. *Conversely*, the city has a new town *equipped* with large buildings, modernized parks, shopping malls and other public facilities. It is not as busy or complicated as Seoul, but it is more **dynamic** and more convenient than other provinces, and I think that is the reason why many people chose this town as their place of residence.

Vocabulary:

Accustomed	to make yourself or another person become used to a situation or place
Harmonize	go well together
Fortress	a large strong building used for defending an important place
Designated	to state officially that a place or thing has a particular character or purpose
Dynamic	energetic and forceful

Useful Expressions

➤ It was difficult to get **accustomed to** this new area since we didn't know a lot of people here.

❖ **Accustom to** : to make yourself or another person become used to a situation or place

☆ She quickly became *accustomed* to his messy ways.

☆ I was *accustomed* to being the only child amongst adults.

➤ There are many interesting places to see here **within easy driving distance**.

❖ **Within easy driving distance**: close enough to drive to in a short time

☆ Our hotel is *within easy driving* distance from the beach.

☆ These great attractions are *within easy driving* distance.

➤ **Conversely**, the city has a new town **equipped with** large buildings, modernized parks, shopping malls and other public facilities.

❖ **Conversely**: used when one situation is the opposite of another

☆ She cannot stand spicy food; *conversely*, her husband is fond of it.

☆ American consumers prefer white eggs; *conversely*, British buyers like brown eggs.

❖ **Equip with**: to provide a person, object, or place with the things that they need for a particular purpose

☆ All the police officers were *equipped with* shields to defend themselves against the rioters.

☆ They spent a lot of money *equipping* the school *with* new computers.

Points of Discussion

1, There are several differences between living in the city and living in the province. How are they different? Which do you like and why?

2, Imagine that you are planning to move to another town or city where your friend lives. Call your friend and ask him three or four questions to find out more about that place.

Grammar Pointer

When we talk about two things, we can "compare" them. We can see if they are the same or different. Perhaps they are the same in some ways and different in other ways. We can use comparative adjectives to describe the differences.

Comparative adjectives are used to compare the difference between 2 nouns, or a group of things.

☆ Suwon is *more dynamic* and *more convenient* than other provinces.

Here, we are talking about more than two provinces, but we are still comparing one thing (Suwon) to one other thing (other provinces).

Other examples:

- ☆ My house is **bigger** than my sister's house.
- ☆ The yellow hat is **more expensive** than the green hat.

RULES FOR USING COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

Comparatives are used to highlight the superiority, inferiority, or equality of one term compared to another.

SUPERIORITY		
Short Adjectives: Add -er at the end of the word		
One-syllable adjectives	cold-colder	It's colder today than yesterday.
Variation: if the adjective ends in -e, just add -r	nice-nicer	I think Dave is nicer than Michael.
Variation: if the adjective ends in consonant, vowel, consonant, double the last consonant	big-bigger	Seoul is bigger than Busan.
Variation: if the adjective ends in -y, change the y to i	pretty-prettier	Sarah is prettier than Emmy.
Long adjectives: Use <i>more</i> before the adjective		
Two-syllable adjectives not ending in –y	Modern-more modern	Our generation is more modern than our parents' generation.
all adjectives of 3 or more syllables	Expensive-more expensive	My car is more expensive than my sister's car.

EQUALITY		
Short and Long Adjectives: As...adjective...as		
Short adjectives	tall-as tall as	Mike is as tall as Paul.
Long Adjectives	delicious-as delicious as	The pie that you bought is as delicious as the pie you baked.
INFERIORITY		
Short and Long Adjectives: less...adjective...than		
Short adjectives	We tend not to use less to form comparatives with one syllable adjectives, as short adjectives often have other words as their opposites.	Your cooking is less bland than Mary's. - Your cooking is spicier than Mary's. It's less warm today, don't you think? - It's cooler today, don't you think?
Long adjectives	Dangerous- less dangerous than	My city is less dangerous than yours.

Some adjectives are **irregular adjectives** and don't follow these rules. They change form considerably from one degree to the next. You need to study these changes carefully in order to recognize them easily.

Irregular Adjectives	
Positive	Comparative
bad	worse
far (degree)	further
far (distance)	farther
good	better
many	more
little	less
old (family)	elder
well (healthy)	better

USE OF 'OTHER' IN COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

We use the comparative to compare one person, thing or group with another person, thing etc. Therefore, the thing that is compared must be excluded from the group of things with which it is compared. This is usually done by using the word '**other**'.

Examples:

- ☆ Alice is taller than any other girl in the class.
- ☆ Gold is more precious than any other metal.
- ☆ Susie is cleverer than most other girls in the class.

There are two more degrees of comparison with the ‘comparative form’ of an adjective.

➤ PARALLEL DEGREE

This comparison is used to show that the qualities of two items talked about in the given sentence go parallel, i.e. if one quality increases, the other quality increases, and if one quality decreases, the other quality also decreases.

Examples:

- ☆ The **bigger** the box, the **heavier** it is.
- ☆ The **steeper** the hill, the **more difficult** it is to push the rock up.

➤ PROGRESSIVE DEGREE

This comparison is used to show that the quality of a thing (adjective or adverb) talked about in the given sentence increases as time passes.

Examples:

- ☆ It's getting **hotter** and **hotter** day by day. (As time passes, the temperature increases.)
- ☆ The days are getting **hotter** and **hotter**.

Topic 4

Tell me about the house that you live in. What does it look like? Please describe it with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Type of house
Body	Location
	Specific details about the interior and exterior of the house
	Family activities done inside the house
Conclusion	Impression on the house

I live in an apartment with my family. It is in a **high-rise edifice** that was built by GS Construction Company. Our 100m² unit is located on the 15th floor. It has three bedrooms, a living room and two shower rooms. Aside from the **comfy** space, I also get pleasure from the **breathtaking** sight of Gumdan Mountain from my bedroom window. *When it comes to* family **bonding**, we often spend our **leisure** time in the living room as it offers larger space and more facilities. The computer, wide screen digital TV and sofa are there. We also have a **treadmill** which is useful for indoor exercise. When we moved to this place three years ago, I felt like it was **somewhat cramped**, but after *a while*, I got accustomed to it. *So far*, we like it here, and we don't have any plans of moving *anytime soon*.

Vocabulary:

High-rise:	being multi-storey and equipped with elevators; tall
Edifice	a structure that has a roof and walls and stands more or less permanently in one place
Comfy:	comfortable
Breathtaking	extremely impressive or beautiful
Bonding:	the process by which a close emotional relationship is developed
Leisure:	the time when you are not working or doing other duties
Somewhat:	slightly
Cramped	not having enough space or time
Treadmill	an exercise machine which consists of a moving strip or two step-like parts on which you walk without moving forward

Idioms and Expressions:

A while:	a period of time
So far:	until now

Useful Expressions

➤ When it comes to family bonding, we always spend our leisure time in the living room.

❖ **When it comes to doing something** : when the subject being discussed is a particular thing

☆ *When it comes to holidays*, I prefer something lazy.

☆ *When it comes to writing letters*, she's hopeless.

➤ I felt like it was **somewhat** cramped, but after a while, I got accustomed to it.

❖ **Somewhat**: slightly

☆ The resort has changed *somewhat* over the last few years.

☆ His behavior has been *somewhat* unreasonable.

➤ **So far**, we like it here, and we don't have any plans of moving **anytime soon**.

❖ **So far** : until now

☆ *So far*, we've made thirty-two thousand pounds.

☆ *So far*, I haven't seen him in the crowd.

❖ **Anytime soon**: in the near future

☆ Things will not improve *anytime soon*.

☆ The strike isn't going to end *anytime soon*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Would you prefer to live in a traditional house or in a modern apartment building? Cite the differences between them with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Tell me about the types of housing in your country and the conditions on purchasing or renting them. Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 3) Could you describe the furniture/equipment that you have at home?

Grammar Pointer

One of the most common grammar mistakes is the use of ‘most’ and ‘most of.’

Like **most** Koreans, I live in an apartment with my family.

In this sentence, we are talking about Koreans in general. If we do not have a specific group of people or things in mind, we use ‘**most**.’ ‘**Most of the X**, on the other hand, is used to refer to a quantity of a specific group. Let’s take a look at the following:

<i>Most students</i> submit their homework.	<i>Most of the students</i> in my math class submit their homework. (most - specific to those who are in my math class)
<i>Most doctors</i> earn a lot of money.	<i>Most of the doctors</i> at this hospital earn a lot of money. (most -specific to those who are at this hospital)

This rule also applies to other quantifiers:

All students want high grades.	All of the students in my class want high grades. (all - specific to those who are in my class)
Many students want less homework.	Many of the students in my school want less homework. (many - specific to those who are in my school)

COMMON ERRORS

Most is not followed by a determiner (a, the, this, etc.); you should use *most of*. If no determiner is used, just use *most*.

- ☆ Most ~~of~~ people like chocolate. (no determiner, so don’t use of)
- ☆ I like most ~~of~~ fruits. (no determiner, so don’t use of)
- ☆ Most of **my** friends like movies. (**my** is a determiner, so you should use of)
- ☆ I want to see most of **the** movies playing at the theater right now. (**the** is a determiner, so you should use of).

Topic 5

Tell me a little bit about yourself and your best friend.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Name
	Background of the first meeting
Body	Description of friend
	Similarities and differences of characters
	Effects and influences
	Description of relationship (Positive and Negative Experiences)
Conclusion	Importance of your best friend

At the age of seven, I met my best friend. Her name's Jane. She was the same age as I, and she lived *three doors down* from me when I moved into a new neighborhood. She made moving into a new place a lot easier. I was always a shy individual, and I *hardly* ever spoke. Jane, *on the other hand*, is the kind of person who is outgoing and always in a good mood. She helped me *out of my shell* and helped me become more comfortable around the people in that place. Moreover, whenever I have a problem that I couldn't quite *work out* myself, she always *gives me a hand*. She always reminds me that there is no problem big enough that cannot be solved. That helped me become a stronger and more **mature** person. My best friend and I *have gone through* a lot in the past 20 years, but we're still going strong. We too have our own *fair share* of misunderstandings and arguments, but in the end, it is our **bond** of friendship that makes us *kiss and make up*. I consider myself **fortunate** to have met her.

Vocabulary:

Mature	behave like adults in a way that shows they are well developed emotionally
Bond:	a close connection joining two or more people
Fortunate:	lucky

Idioms and Expressions:

Out of my shell	stop being shy; become more confident
Work out	to find a solution for; solve
Give someone a hand	to help someone
Fair share	to have a lot or more than enough of something bad
Kiss and make up	to resolve a quarrel; to become friends/lovers again

Useful Expressions

- She lived **three doors down** from me when I moved into a new neighborhood.
❖ **Three doors down:** used for saying how many rooms or houses you need to count before you come to the room or house you are talking about

☆ His office is *three doors down* from mine.

☆ My friend lives *two doors down* the street.

- I was always a shy individual, and I **hardly** ever spoke.
❖ **Hardly:** used when something is almost not true or almost doesn't happen at all

☆ Can you speak louder ? I can *hardly* hear you.

☆ He hardly ate anything/He ate *hardly* anything. He must be ill.

☆ We *hardly* ever go to concerts.

- Jane, **on the other hand**, is the kind of person who is outgoing and always in a good mood.
❖ **On the other hand:** used to show two sides of an issue. It's similar to "conversely," but it doesn't always describe an opposite situation.

☆ I'd like to eat out. *On the other hand*, I should be trying to save money.

☆ Jill is wonderful at math; *on the other hand*, her brother is terrible at it.

☆ She hates housecleaning. *On the other hand*, she doesn't mind cooking.

- She always **gives me a hand**.
❖ **Give somebody a hand:** to help someone

☆ Could you *give me a hand* with these boxes, Mike?

☆ Let me know when you're moving and I'll *give you a hand*.

- My best friend and I have **gone through** a lot in the past 20 years.
❖ **Go through:** to experience something difficult or unpleasant things

☆ After her mother died, she *went through a lot* of hardships.

☆ We can't really imagine what they're *going through*.

- We too have our own **fair share** of misunderstandings and arguments.
- ❖ **Fair share of something:** to have a lot or more than enough of something bad

☆ Jean has had her *fair share* of tragedy.
☆ He has suffered more than his *fair share* of disappointments.

- It is our bond of friendship that makes us **kiss and make up**.
- ❖ **Kiss and make up:** to resolve a quarrel; to become friends/lovers again

☆ Ian and I used to fight a lot, but we always *kissed and made up* afterwards.
☆ I'm sorry. Let's *kiss and make up*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I'd like to know about the type of people you get along with best. Tell me how you choose your friends.
- 2) Have you ever seriously argued with your friend or misunderstood each other? What was the reason and how did you solve it?
- 3) You might have long-distance friends. Where are they? Do you still keep in touch with them? How? Tell me how you keep your friendship despite the distance.

Grammar Pointer

Enough can be used in many different ways. Here are some of its uses.

Adjective + Enough

Let's take a look at the sentence from the sample answer:

She always reminds me that there is no problem big *enough* that cannot be solved.

Notice that before enough, we have the adjective big. Enough is a degree modifier. When enough modifies an adjective/adverb, it normally comes after the adjective/adverb.

- ☆ Is your coffee **hot enough**?
- ☆ I will never be **rich enough**.
- ☆ He didn't work **hard enough**.

Enough + noun

Enough can be used before a noun phrase as a determiner.

- ☆ Are you getting *enough sleep*?
- ☆ There is *enough room* for everybody to sit down.

Before a pronoun or a noun with a determiner, we use *enough of*.

- ☆ The exam was bad. I couldn't answer *enough of the questions*.

Enough of is also used after personal and geographical names.

- ☆ I haven't seen *enough of Europe*.

Topic 6

Can you describe your neighbors with as much detail as possible? How often do you see them? What do you like to do with them and what do you usually talk about with them?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement about the neighbors
Body	Frequency of meeting neighbors
	Knowledge about neighbors
	Activities enjoyed with neighbors
Conclusion	Thought about having a good relationship with neighbors

I don't know much about my neighbors because I do not see them often. *In fact*, I barely talk to them. You see, when you live in an apartment in the city, you don't really interact with your neighbors. This is especially true in Ha Noi where a lot of people are too busy to get to know their fellow tenants. All I know is that my neighbors who live next door are a family of four, including one elderly woman. I learned this after I talked with the family's father in the elevator before, but it was very brief. After sometime, I have seen the others too. Whenever we pass by each other, we exchange usual greetings as an act of politeness. Now that I think of it, my encounters with my neighbors are always in the elevator or in the hallway. Because of this, I am a little familiar with their faces, but *that's it*. However, I think having a little chat with them would be nice.

Vocabulary:

Barely	used for saying that something almost does not happen or exist
Interact	to communicate with or react to
Tenant	a person who pays rent for the use of land or a building
Brief	lasting only a short time or containing few words
Encounter	a meeting, especially one that happens by chance

Idioms and Expressions:

Get to know : to start to be familiar with someone or something

Useful Expressions

- **In fact**, I barely talk to them.

❖ **In fact**: used when you are adding something, especially something surprising, to emphasize what you have just said

☆ I know the mayor really well. *In fact*, I had dinner with her last week.

☆ The bookstore sells cards. *In fact*, they have the best cards around.

Other usage:

❖ **In fact**: used to emphasize that the truth about a situation is the opposite of what has been mentioned

☆ They told me it would be cheap, but *in fact* it cost me nearly \$500.

- This is especially true in Seoul where a lot of people are too busy to **get to know** their fellow tenants.

❖ **Get to know**: to start to be familiar with someone or something

☆ The first couple of meetings are for the doctor and patient to *get to know* each other.

☆ I'll need a few weeks to *get to know* the system.

☆ It took a while to *get to know* the city properly.

- All I know is that my neighbors who live **next door** are a family of four.

❖ **Next door**: in the building, room, or position next to yours, or next to another

☆ I live *next door* to John.

☆ Michael came in from the office *next door*.

- After **sometime**, I have seen the others too.

❖ **Sometime**: at a time in the future or the past which is not known or not stated

☆ The album is expected to be released *sometime* next year.

☆ Jessica got back from Denver *sometime* last Tuesday afternoon.

- Because of this, I am a little familiar with their faces, but **that's it**.

❖ **That's it** : used to say that something has ended

☆ Well, *that's it*, we've finished - we can go home now.

☆ *That's it!* I'm not putting up with any more of her rudeness.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Tell me about the time when you helped a neighbor or a friend. Explain what the problem was and what you did to help, and how things turned out.
- 2) Is there anything that your neighbors do that annoys you? What do they do? Have you done anything to solve the problem? Tell me in detail.
- 3) Tell me about the most memorable neighbor that you had. Name at least three of his/her characteristics, and state why that neighbor is memorable.

Grammar Pointer

Take a look at the following sentences used in the sample answer:

- ☆ In fact, I barely **talk** to them.
- ☆ I learned this after I **talked** with the family's father in the elevator before, but it was very brief.

As you noticed, *talk* is used in the sentences above to show that conversations should between or among people take/took place.

There are a lot of times we get confused from using *speak* and *talk*, and *say* and *tell*. Now, let's discuss each of them and their proper usage.

Speak	Talk
<ul style="list-style-type: none">✓ used for one-sided communications<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ She <i>spoke</i> to her employees.■ I'll have to <i>speak</i> to that boy -- he's getting very lazy.■ I'm going to <i>speak</i> to the manager about the way I have been treated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">✓ suggests that two or more people are having a conversation<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Everyone was <i>talking</i> when he walked into the room.■ You'll have to <i>talk</i> to the manager to ask for a discount.■ We stayed up all night <i>talking</i>.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">✓ the usual word to refer to knowledge and use of languages<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ She <i>speaks</i> three languages fluently.■ Can you <i>speak</i> Chinese?■ What's he speaking? (=what language?)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">✓ Talk about= discuss<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ They're <i>talking</i> about the new <i>Harry Potter</i> film.■ I really don't want to <i>talk</i> about it.

Structure: Speak to someone/about something

Structure: Talk to someone/about something

Say	Tell
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ used to report someone's words/statement <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ She <i>said</i>, "I'm thirsty." ■ She <i>said</i> that she's thirsty. ✓ most often used without a personal object <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ He <i>said</i> that he would call. (not He said me...) ✓ followed by 'to' before the object <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Did she <i>say</i> that <i>to you</i>? ■ Jenny <i>said to</i> me that she was coming. ✓ used to ask about languages <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ How do you <i>say</i> 'water' in Korean? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ used to inform or instruct <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Could you <i>tell</i> me the way to the station please? ■ <i>Tell</i> the children to go to bed. ■ She <i>told</i> me that she would call at 2pm. ✓ followed directly by the object <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ She <i>told me</i> her name. ■ Did he <i>tell you</i> when he's coming back? ✓ used in giving an account or narration <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Tom is good at <i>telling</i> stories.
<p>☞ "Say"는 다른 사람의 말이나 주장을 있는 그대로 전하거나 특정언어를 말하다 는 뜻으로도 사용</p>	<p>☞ "Tell"은 상황을 알리거나 지시할 때로 화자의 의도가 좀더 포함된 의미이며 이야기나 구체적인 정보를 전달하고자 할 때 사용</p>
<p>Structure: Say something/to someone/ about something</p>	<p>Structure: Tell someone about something/someone that.../someone to +verb</p>

COMMON ERRORS

We cannot:

say someone to do something	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✗ Mike <i>said</i> Jack to go away. ✓ Mike told Jack to go away.
say someone something	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✗ Celine <i>said</i> me that she was sleepy. ✓ Celine told me that she was sleepy.
tell something	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✗ He <i>told</i> that he likes chocolates. ✓ He said that he likes chocolates.
tell to someone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✗ Rita <i>told</i> to me that she was studying. ✓ Rita told me that she was studying. ✓ Rita said to me that she was studying.
say a lie	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✗ Paul always <i>says</i> lies. ✓ Paul always tells lies.
say or tell a reported question	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✗ She <i>said</i> if I wanted to come. ✓ She asked if I wanted to come. ✗ She <i>told</i> what I wanted to do. ✓ She asked what I wanted to do.

Topic 7

You indicated in the survey that you have a pet. Can you describe your pet for me? How do you take care of your pet?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Type and name of pet
Body	Derivation of pet's name
	Reasons for choosing and liking the pet
	Own ways of taking care of the pet
Conclusion	Feelings towards pet

I have a two-year-old British Longhair cat named Belle. I got her name from my favorite Disney character, Princess Belle of Beauty and the Beast. *Among* all of the pets in the shop, Belle was the most attractive. I picked her because I was **enticed** by her **tantalizing** eyes and **cuddly** form. Moreover, she has a **lustrous** white fur and a **stout physique**. Whenever I come home from a tiring and stressful day at work, she's the one that makes me smile and comforts me. *In return*, I make sure to provide everything that she needs. Furthermore, I take her to a **vet** once a month to **ensure** her good health condition and to **seek** professional advice. I'll never get tired of taking care of Belle, for she brought added joy to me and my family. She's definitely *more than* a pet to us. She's our best **buddy**!

Vocabulary:

Entice	to persuade someone to do something by offering them something pleasant
Tantalizing	pleasantly inviting
Cuddly	a person or animal that is cuddly makes you want to hug them
Lustrous	very shiny
Stout	slightly fat
Physique	the general appearance of the body with regard to size, shape, muscular development, etc.
Attribute	a quality or characteristic that someone or something has
Vet	veterinarian; animal doctor
Ensure	to make something certain to happen
Seek	to ask someone for advice or help
Buddy	friend

Idioms and Expressions:

In return	as payment or in exchange for something, or as a way of thanking someone for something
------------------	--

Useful Expressions

- **Among** all of the pets in the shop, Belle was the most attractive.
❖ **Among:** used for saying that someone or something is included in a particular group of people or things

☆ The disease spread quickly *among* the members of the community.
☆ *Among* all the ladies who attended the prom, she's the most attractive.
☆ The legislators argued *among* themselves with regard to the newest bill.

- I picked her because I was **enticed** by her tantalizing eyes and cuddly form.
❖ **Entice:** to persuade someone to do something by offering them something pleasant

☆ A smell of coffee in the doorway *enticed* people to enter the shop.
☆ Anna is always *enticed* to buy fabulous pairs of shoes in the department store.
☆ The thought of passing the test *enticed* me to answer the question with the best of my ability.

- **In return**, I make sure to provide everything that she needs and personally groom and feed her everyday.
❖ **In return:** as payment or in exchange for something, or as a way of thanking someone for something

☆ We get many benefits *in return* for our taxes.
☆ America helped the rebels *in return* for their promise to support democracy.
☆ What can we do *in return* for your kindness?

- She's definitely **more than a pet** to us.
❖ **More than something:** to a greater degree

☆ Sherry is definitely *more than a friend* to me; she's more of a sister.
☆ Gardening is *more than just a hobby*; it takes skill, knowledge and lots of devotion.
☆ Teaching is *more than just a job*. It's a calling.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Keeping a pet is rewarding, but oftentimes tiring and challenging too. Pets need to be taken care of properly. Can you recall any difficulty that you encountered in taking care of your pet? How did you handle it? Please explain in as much detail as possible.
- 2) Some people exert extra effort to dress up or ornament their pets, but others don't like it, especially animal rights advocates. There are people who say this is one way of violating animal rights. What is your stand about this? Please explain in as much detail as possible.
- 3) I'm sorry, but you have a problem to solve. Your friend wants you to take care of his or her pet while traveling. However, one of your family members disagrees with this plan. Call your friend and explain the situation. Then offer an alternative to handle this matter.

Grammar Pointer

Two special kinds of modifiers add to our range of possibilities for expanding the basic sentence. The first one of these represents a special use of nouns (appositives). The second represents a special use of verbs, or rather parts of verbs (verbals).

In this unit, we'll tackle the use of **appositives**.

☆I got her name from my favorite Disney character.

The sentence above is grammatically correct. However, it lacks details. Which Disney character is that person referring to? An efficient way of giving life and vitality to what you are saying is to use appositives and appositive phrases. **An appositive is a word or group of words that identifies or renames another word in a sentence.**

Thus, the sentence above can be made better by saying:

I got her name from my favorite Disney character, *Princess Belle of Beauty and the Beast*.

Princess Belle of Beauty and the Beast is the appositive. Now, we can identify which Disney character the speaker is referring to.

USES

Noun phrase appositives are useful when combining sentences in order to emphasize the most important points and speak more concisely. They can also help you eliminate unnecessary words or repetitions.

Examples:

- 1) One of my nieces is named Sally.
- 2) She catches fish well.

While there is nothing wrong with these sentences, they can be combined to form one sentence that conveys the same information with fewer words.

Combined: My niece Sally catches fish well.

☆ The barber cut my hair. His name is Bob. There are three men named Bob in our town.

Combined: The barber, one of three men named Bob in our town, cut my hair.

BASIC RULES FOR APPositIVES

An appositive usually follows the word or phrase it modifies, but can be placed at the beginning or end of a sentence as well:

An innovative writer, Leonard Cohen grew up in Montreal, Canada.

Here, we can see the noun (and subject) of the sentence is *Leonard Cohen*. In this case, we've put the modifying appositive, *An innovative writer*, at the beginning of the sentence and it works just fine.

Topic 8

Now, I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. You are being interviewed for a new job which you've been looking for. Please explain why you want this position and why you are the most appropriate person for this position.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General reasons for aiming for the position
Body	Descriptive explanation of work-related qualifications
	Details on speaker's work ethic
	Speaker's assurance to contribute in company's success
Conclusion	Overall idea on speakers efficiency

I want this position because it seems **tailored** to my **competencies**, and it also contains the challenge to *keep me on my toes*. My experience in web designing has me **intrigued** by the opportunity this position presents. I have a five-year experience in creating varied design **prototypes**, and have already *played a key role* in the coding and design of several major sites for companies *such as* IBM, Macy's and others. Moreover, I'm a fast learner who adapts quickly to change. I'm also dedicated and enthusiastic. I will ensure that your company meets its goals, and I will provide top-quality results with **minimal** supervision. Indeed, this is a very good opportunity for my skills and qualifications to *make a difference*.

Vocabulary:

Tailored	made or adapted especially for a particular situation or purpose
Competencies	important skills which are needed to do a job
Intrigue	to arouse the interest or curiosity of
Prototype	the first example of something, such as a machine or other industrial product, from which all later forms are developed
Minimal	extremely small in amount or degree, or as small as possible

Idioms and Expressions:

Keep me on my toes	to be constant in effort to do something
Play a key role	to have a lot of power or influence in a particular situation
Make a difference	to have an important effect on something

Useful Expressions

- My experience in web designing **has me intrigued** by the opportunity this position presents.

❖ **Have:** to make someone have a particular feeling or do something in a particular way

- ☆ The new movie trailer *has us* intrigued.
☆ This advertisement *has me* puzzled.
☆ The new application I downloaded *has me* hooked.

- I have already **played a key role** in the coding and design of several major sites for companies **such as** IBM, Macy's and others.

❖ **Play a key role :** to have a lot of power or influence in a particular situation

- ☆ The secretary of State *plays a key role* in foreign affairs and policy.
☆ He has *played a key role* in reforming the company's rules and regulations.
☆ Information Technology *has a big part* in fostering development.

❖ **Such as:** for example

- ☆ Instrumental music, *such as* classical and jazz, helps Jessica draw better.
☆ Jill would love to travel to several European cities *such as* London, Florence, and Athens.

- I will provide **top-quality** results with minimal supervision.

❖ **Top-quality:** having superior grade or quality

- ☆ The food at that restaurant is of *top-quality*.
☆ I always buy a *top-quality* product even if it is slightly more expensive.

- **Indeed,** this is a very good opportunity for my skills and qualifications to **make a difference.**

❖ **Indeed:** in truth (often tends to intensify)

- ☆ *Indeed*, it did rain as hard as predicted.
☆ It is very cold *indeed*.
☆ They said the car would break down and *indeed* it did.

❖ **Make a difference:** to have an important effect on something

- ☆ This scheme will certainly *make a difference* to the way I do my job.
- ☆ Exercise has *made a difference* in her health.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Tell me something about your first job interview. Who interviewed you? What was your feeling like? Describe your experience with as much detail as possible.
- 2) The interviewer suggests that you are over-qualified or too experienced for the position that you are applying for. What would you do in this situation?
- 3) What are the preparations that you do before the interview? Do you think preparing before the interview is important? Why/why not?



Grammar Pointer

We already know that when we have a plural quantifier, then the plural form of the noun should be used.

Number Modifier
The ladder has <i>ten</i> steps. 
The book has <i>four hundred</i> pages. 
I work out for <i>30</i> minutes. 
I've been married for <i>5</i> years. 

When a number and noun are combined to modify a noun, no plural form is used in the modifier.

Number Modifier	Number + Noun Modifier
The ladder has <i>ten</i> steps. 	It is a <i>ten-step</i> ladder. 
The book has <i>four hundred</i> pages. 	It is a <i>four-hundred-page</i> book. 
I work out for <i>30</i> minutes. 	It is a <i>30-minute</i> workout. 
I've been married for <i>5</i> years. 	I have a <i>five-year</i> marriage. 

COMMON ERRORS

Error	Correct
It was nine pounds baby.	It was a <i>nine-pound</i> baby.
He lifted a 300 pounds weight.	He lifted a <i>300-pound</i> weight.
There are 11 millions people in my city.	There are <i>11-million</i> people in my city.

Chapter

2

Company

-
-
-
-
-
-
-
-
- Topic 1. Description of Company
- Topic 2. Normal Workday
-
- Topic 3. Colleague or Boss
-
- Topic 4. Office
-
- Topic 5. Dress Code
-
- Topic 6. Going to the office
-
- Topic 7. Lunch
-
- Topic 8. Difficult Situation at work
-
- Topic 9. Achievement
-
- Topic 10 Role play: Informing client about vacation
-
- Topic 11. Introducing a new product to clients

Topic 1

You indicated in the survey that you work. Please give me a description of the company you work for. What is the name of the company and what kind of business does it do? Give me a detailed description of your company.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Company Name and Profile
Body	Type of industry / Business
	Products and services
	Market and customer
	Head office and branches
	Future company plans
Conclusion	Opinion or thoughts about the company's future

I work for a company called BCY Group which was established in early 2008. It first started as an independent business, but it soon *teamed up* with some local companies. Our company **specializes in** providing and distributing quality bicycle equipment, **gears**, parts and other bike **essentials**. We *cater to* all cyclists of all ages, especially to the commuters. Our office is headquartered in Changwon, but we have three other branches in Korea. We seek to expand and promote our products, so we are planning to open another branch in Goyang and probably in Seoul next year. Additionally, we were asked to supply our products to several countries including USA, Japan and other EU countries in the near future. Because of this, I am confident our company will *come a long way*.

Vocabulary:

Specialize in	to be devoted or focused to a special area of work or study
Gear	equipment that is used or needed for a particular purpose
Essential	something that is needed for life, or needed in a particular situation
Commuter	someone who travels regularly to and from work

Idioms and Expressions:

Team up	form a team, collaborate, cooperate, work together
Cater to	give what is desired, needed or required; try to satisfy (a particular need or demand)
Come a long way	to make a lot of progress and improvement

Useful Expressions

- It soon **teamed up** with some local companies.
 - ❖ **Team up:** to join another person, or form a group with other people, in order to do something together

☆ They *teamed up* for a charity performance.

☆ They *teamed up* with Tom Jones to record the hit single.

- Our company **specializes in** providing and distributing quality bicycle equipments, gears, parts and other bike essentials.
 - ❖ **Specialize in :** to be devoted or focused to a special area of work or study

☆ We *specialize* in the distribution of leading edge technology battery packs for notebook computers, camcorders, digital cameras, PDA, and power tools.

☆ I need a travel company that *specializes* in European tours.

- We **cater to** all cyclists of all ages, especially to the commuters.
 - ❖ **Cater to:** give what is desired, needed or required; try to satisfy (a particular need or demand)

☆ There are more and more TV shows *catering to* young male audience.

☆ My company is an LA bank *catering to* Asian businesses.

- I am confident our company will **come a long way**.
 - ❖ **Come a long way:** to make a lot of progress and improvement

☆ Computer graphics have *come a long way* in the last few years.

☆ Tom has *come a long way* in his career in a short time.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Do you remember the first day that you entered your company? What was your impression or feeling about the people you met? Tell me about your first day in your company with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Some people prefer to work for themselves or own a business. Others prefer to work for an employer. Would you rather be self-employed, work for someone else, or own a business?

Grammar Pointer

You have already learned that **verbs** are the action words in the sentence. They tell us what the subject does or what the subject is.

However, there are certain words that seem to carry the idea of action or being but do not function as a true verb. They act like other parts of speech such as nouns, adjectives or adverbs. These words are called **verbals**.

There are three kinds of verbals:

- 1) Infinitives
- 2) Gerunds
- 3) Participles

In this unit, we'll study infinitives, their forms and uses.

- ☆ We seek *to expand* and promote our products.
- ☆ We are planning *to open* another branch in Goyang.
- ☆ We were asked *to supply* our products to several countries.

The italicized words above are examples of **infinitives**. An infinitive will almost always begin with **TO** followed by the base form of the verb, like this:

TO + **VERB** = **INFINITIVE**

THE FUNCTION OF INFINITIVES IN SENTENCES

Infinitives Used as Nouns	
As a subject	<i>To cheat</i> is immoral.
As a direct object	We seek <i>to expand</i> and promote our products.
As a predicate nominative	The city's plans are <i>to build</i> a large convention center and hotel complex.
As an object of a preposition	I was about <i>to speak</i> .
As an appositive	Our good intention, <i>to diet</i> , disappeared quickly.

Infinitives Used as Modifiers	
As an adjective	The doctor gave me some vitamins <i>to take</i> .
As an adverb	Ice cream is easy <i>to freeze</i> .

IMPORTANT!

An infinitive will almost always begin with **to**. Exceptions do occur, however. An infinitive will lose its TO when it follows certain verbs. These verbs are:

➤ **Verbs of perception + object (action has finished):**

feel	They felt the ground shake.
hear	I heard Peter sing a song.
notice	Mandy noticed the boy climb the tree.
see	He saw them go out.
watch	He watched the thieves steal a car.

➤ **Let + object :**

let	Sandy let her child go out alone.
	Mother let her daughter decide on her own.
let's	Let's go for a walk through the park.

➤ **Make + object:**

make	She <i>made</i> Peggy and Samantha <i>clean</i> the room.
------	---

Topic 2

Tell me a little bit about your work. What is your normal workday like? Please describe your typical day at the office with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General description of workday
Body	Preparation time frame
	Typical workload
	Secondary activities
Conclusion	Feelings about work

I usually have a busy workday. I go to work between 7:10 and 7:40 and prepare for the day. It's important that I arrive early because I usually have meetings with my superiors to *keep them posted* about an **ongoing** project. Sometimes, I hold morning meetings myself for updates about my team's progress concerning a particular project which I am *held accountable for*. However, if there are no meetings to attend to, I check my emails and office memos and officially start my work for the day. My work involves a lot of paperwork, so I stay at my desk all day with breaks *in between*. However, there are times I need to meet and attend to our customer's needs outside the office which could take a long time depending on the location. I normally *get off* work at 8 PM after I completed my tasks. However, if I still have a number of other matters to attend to, then I have no choice but to *stick around* at work until I get things done. **Despite** my **hectic** schedule, I still feel satisfied.

Vocabulary:

Ongoing	still happening or being done
Despite	used for saying that something happens even though something else might have prevented it
Hectic	full of busy activity

Idioms and Expressions:

Keep someone posted	to keep someone informed of what is happening
Hold accountable	to consider someone responsible for something
In between	at a point between two other things
Get off	to leave the place where you work at the end of the day
Stick around	to remain in a place for longer than you originally intended

Useful Expressions

- It's important that I arrive early because I usually have meetings with my superiors to **keep them posted** about an ongoing project.
- ❖ **Keep someone posted:** to keep someone informed of what is happening

☆ *Keep me posted* on anything that happens while I'm away.

☆ The doctors *kept me posted* about her condition.

- Sometimes, I hold morning meetings myself for updates about my team's progress concerning a particular project which I am **held accountable for**.
- ❖ **Hold accountable for:** to consider someone responsible for something

☆ Our other employees cannot be *held accountable for* the irresponsible actions of one man in the company.

☆ Should I be *held accountable for* the mistake made by my boss?

☆ Our new auditors were *held accountable for* the 45% losses of our company.

- My work involves a lot of paperwork, so I stay at my desk all day with breaks **in between**.
- ❖ **In between:** at a point between two other things

☆ I love crackers with a filling *in between*.

☆ Two cars with a truck *in between* are racing with each other.

- I have no choice but to **stick around** at work until I get things done.
- ❖ **Stick around:** to remain in a place for longer than you originally intended

☆ We have to *stick around* and learn something.

☆ You go. I'll *stick around* here a bit longer.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What positive effects does your work have on you? What are the negative effects? If there are any, what can you do about it?
- 2) Do you have to work overtime? If so, how often? Tell me about the time you worked on an important project and worked overtime. When was it? Why did you work overtime? Tell me in as much detail as possible.
- 3) What kind of job would you like to have in the future? Provide some reasons why you would like to have that job.

Grammar Pointer

In Chapter 1, we learned about coordinating conjunctions. They glue together sentence elements that are equal. However, there are times when one idea is more important than another. In these cases, we need to use a **subordinating conjunction**. The more important idea belongs in the main clause, the less important in the clause introduced by a subordinate conjunction.

Let's take a look at the following sentence:

If there are no meetings to attend to, I check my emails and office memos and officially start my work for the day.

check emails and office memos; start work > attending meetings

Subordinate clause	if there are no meetings to attend to
Main clause	I check my emails and office memos and officially start my work for the day.

Form:



A **subordinate clause** is a dependent clause that adds some extra information to the main clause. These phrases cannot stand by themselves, and their meaning is dependent upon that of the independent clause.

before we reached the station
although he is ill
after you had gone

These are not complete sentences. They all have subjects (*we, he, you*) and verbs (*reached, is, had gone*), but since they cannot stand alone, they are subordinate clauses.

A **main clause** is an independent clause that can stand alone as a sentence. In other words, a main clause does not need any additional information to operate as a sentence.

The train had left.
He is always cheerful.
I returned home.

Subordinating conjunctions let us join subordinate clauses with independent clauses:

The train had left *before we reached the station*.
He is always cheerful *although he is ill*.
I returned home *after you had gone*.

A complete idea has been expressed, and enough information has been presented in order to fully explain the thought.

The sentences above follow this pattern:



The other function of the subordinate conjunction is to provide a necessary transition between the two ideas in the sentence. This transition will indicate a *time, place, or cause and effect* relationship.

Subordinating Conjunctions					
Time	Reason	Concession	Place	Condition	Manner
before	because	although	where	if	as if
since	since	though	wherever	unless	as though
when	so that	even though		until	how
whenever	in order that	while		in case	
while	why			provided	
until				that	
as				assuming	
as . . . as				that	
once				even if	

Time: I normally get off work at 8 PM *after I completed my tasks*.

Reason: He will get a promotion *because he has proved his efficiency*.

Concession: She is always neatly dressed *although she is poor*.

Place: I shall go *wherever I want to*.

Condition: *If I still have a number of other matters to attend to*, then I have no choice but to stick around at work until I get things done.

Manner: It was *as if he had lost his last friend*.

Topic 3

Tell me a little bit about a colleague or the boss you are working with. What kind of person is he or she?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Name and position
Body	Characteristics of the person
Conclusion	Impact/ influence of the person to the speaker

Mr. Paul Shin, my manager, is a *down-to-earth* person. He is professional *in every sense of the word* and *gives all of us a free hand* to make whatever changes we feel necessary for the company. He knows exactly how to *keep us on our toes*, how to *push* harder and when to *let up*. He remains calm when **confronting** problems and is always fair in handling issues in the office. He never **berates** anyone, and if he has some criticisms on our work, it is always followed by a **constructive** solution or suggestion. He is simply an inspiration for all of us. **Undeniably**, he has shown us what the true meaning of professionalism is.

Vocabulary:

Confronting	facing, meeting or dealing with a difficult situation or problem
Berate	to criticize or speak in an angry manner to someone
Constructive	promoting improvement or development
Undeniably	certainly true

Idioms and Expressions:

Down-to-earth	practical and sensible
Give someone a free hand	to allow someone to do whatever they think is necessary in a particular situation
Keep someone on his/her toes	keep someone occupied; keep someone busy
Keep your feet on the ground	to be very practical and see things as they really are

Useful Expressions

- He is professional **in every sense of the word**.
❖ **In every sense of the word:** exactly as it says

☆ I think that she is a true friend, *in every sense of the word*.
☆ He is truly an amazing teacher *in every sense of the word*.

- He **gives all of us a free hand**.
❖ **Give someone a free hand:** to allow someone to do whatever they think is necessary in a particular situation

☆ The senior managers *give their employees a free hand* to make their work schedule.
☆ The management *has given me a free hand* over a similar project I did last year.

- He knows exactly how to **keep me on our toes**, when to **push** harder and when to **let up**.
❖ **Keep someone on his/her toes:** keep someone occupied; keep someone busy

☆ My boss gave me extra things to do just to *keep me on my toes*.
☆ My toddler son always *keeps me on my toes*. I have to be ready for anything all the time.
❖ **Push:** to direct someone to do or achieve something

☆ You'll never be successful if you don't *push* yourself (= work) harder.
☆ The school manages to *push* most of its students through their exams.
❖ **Let up:** to slow down

☆ I was told by my doctor to *let up* on my work schedule or I will be sick.
☆ Neil spent the entire evening moaning about his job - he just wouldn't *let up*.

- It is always followed by a **constructive** solution or suggestion.
❖ **Constructive:** promoting improvement or development

☆ She criticized my writing, but in a way that was very *constructive*. I learned a lot from her.
☆ If you don't have anything *constructive* to say, I'd rather you kept quiet.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have you ever experienced a disagreement with your colleague or boss about work? How did it happen and how did you solve it? Please tell me something about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Good leadership is very important. Could you tell me about the good qualities a leader should have? Do you think your boss has these qualities?
- 3) How do people address each other at work in your country? How do you address your boss? Your co-workers? What do you think of the idea that at most offices in the US nearly everyone goes by their first names?

Grammar Pointer

He knows exactly how to keep us on my toes, how to push *harder* and when to let up.

The sentence above makes use of the word *harder*. We've learned that adverbs describe adjectives, verbs and other adverbs. Why didn't we use *more hardly* in this sentence? In English, many adverbs are formed by adding '-ly' to the adjective.

Adjective	Adverb
careful	carefully
intelligent	intelligently
safe	safely

but *hard* is special. It can be either an adjective or an adverb, and when we put -ly, it will have a different meaning. Let's examine their differences.

Hard: do something with a lot of effort.

- ☆ I have to work *hard* today.
- ☆ She has thought very *hard* about her future plans.

Hardly: in modern use, means to do something with little effort.

- ☆ He *hardly* does any work. (He does almost no work.)
- ☆ She *hardly* studies. (She almost never studies.)

These are examples of sentences when **hard** is used as an adjective:

- ☆ I've had a really *hard* day at the office today.
- ☆ A waiter's job can be very *hard* sometimes.

Here are other examples:

Adjective	Adverb
She's a <i>fast</i> driver.	She drives <i>fast</i> .
She has <i>straight</i> hair.	He went <i>straight</i> home.
The plants flower in <i>early</i> spring.	I don't get up very <i>early</i> .

Knowing what an adjective is and what an adverb is is very important in English grammar. Mistakes are often typical when there is confusion over the difference between adjectives and adverbs.

ADJECTIVES AND VERBS

After look, sound, taste, smell, feel, and similar verbs, an adjective is often used to describe the subject.

- ✗ These flowers look beautifully.
- ✓ These flowers look *beautiful*.
- ✗ My wife's smells exquisitely.
- ✓ My wife's perfume smells *exquisite*.
- ✗ How well the chimes sound on the porch!
- ✓ How *good* the chimes sound on the porch!

- ✓ We stand *firm* in our conviction.
- ✓ The checks you mailed reached us *safe*.

IMPORTANT!

As a general rule, use the **ADJECTIVE** whenever some form of the verb *to be* or *to seem* may be substituted; if you cannot substitute a word, then use the adverb.

- ✓ These flowers look beautiful.
- ✓ These flowers are beautiful.

Topic 4

Where is your office located? Can you tell me what your office or work space looks like with as much detail as possible?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Location of company
Body	Size of office
	Exact office location
	Duration of stay
	Specific details of the interior
Conclusion	Personal thought about the workplace

I work for a local advertising company that's located at the *heart* of Seoul. Since it's not as big as the other firms, our office space is just enough for us. Our workplace is on the 10th floor of the 38-storey SK Building—one of the many **towering** structures in the city. We started **leasing** the space five years ago, and it has improved a lot since then. Currently, it's fully **furnished** with **fitments**, machines and **gadgets** that we need in accomplishing our tasks. When you enter our office, you'll be welcomed by the piles of papers on top of every table and the **aroma** of our boss' *all-time* favorite, brewed coffee. Also, the two medium-sized glass windows allow you to have a **glimpse** of the busy streets of Seoul and the neighboring buildings. Furthermore, we have a **cozy** pantry and conference room. In general, I believe that both the wonderful physical **attributes** of our office and the awesome people who *work their fingers to the bones* everyday create a perfect working environment.

Vocabulary:

Towering	much taller than surrounding people or things
Leasing	renting; using or occupying a property during a specified period in exchange for a specified rent, usually with a contract
Furnished	provided with whatever is necessary for a purpose
Fitment	a piece of furniture that can be moved; any of the items furnishing or equipping a room
Gadget	a small device or machine with a particular purpose
Aroma	a strong pleasant smell, usually from food or drink
Glimpse	a quick, brief or incomplete view or look
Cozy	having or fostering a warm or friendly and informal atmosphere
Attribute	a quality or characteristic that someone or something has

Idioms and Expressions:

Working somebody's fingers to the bones

to work very hard

Useful Expressions

➤ I work for a local advertising company that's located at the **heart** of Seoul.

❖ **Heart:** the central part of something

☆ We need to look for an office at the *heart* of the financial district.

☆ They have a beautiful house deep in the *heart* of the English countryside.

Other usage:

❖ **Heart:** the most important or basic part of something

☆ Cost-cutting is at the *heart* of their development plan.

❖ **Heart:** your feelings and emotions considered as part of your character

☆ My advice would be to follow your *heart*.

➤ It's fully **furnished** with fitments, machines and gadgets that we need in accomplishing our tasks.

❖ **Furnished:** provided with whatever is necessary for a purpose

☆ She's looking for a *furnished* apartment.

☆ Their house is expensively *furnished*.

➤ You'll be welcomed by the piles of papers on top of every table and the aroma of our boss' **all-time** favorite, brewed coffee.

❖ **All-time:** used when you compare things to say that one of them is the best, worst etc that there has ever been

☆ He is the team's *all-time* leading goal scorer.

☆ The prices of the department store's items are at an *all-time* high.

☆ Titanic is my *all-time* favorite film. It's incomparable.

- I believe that both the wonderful physical attributes of our office and the awesome people who **work their fingers to the bones** everyday create a perfect working environment.
 - ❖ **Working somebody's fingers to the bones:** work very hard
- ☆ I *work my fingers to the bone* for my family.
- ☆ Just keep *working your fingers to the bone*, and you'll surely be successful one day!

Points of Discussion

- 1) Does your office environment affect your productivity at work? Tell me how your workplace affects your work performance. Cite examples and give as much detail as possible.
- 2) Tell me how your desk looks like? What office tools and equipment are there? Describe your workstation with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

The importance of prepositions and their use in the English language cannot be overstated. Communicative English that is logical and easy to understand does rely strongly on the correct use of prepositions and prepositional phrases.

WHAT ARE PREPOSITIONS?

Prepositions are a class of words that indicate relationships between nouns, pronouns and other words in a sentence. Most often they come before a noun. They never change their form, regardless of the case, gender etc. of the word they are referring to.

There are hardly any rules as to when to use which preposition. The only way to learn prepositions is looking them up in a dictionary, reading a lot in English and learning useful phrases off by heart.

In this unit, we'll study:

PREPOSITIONS THAT ESTABLISH RELATIONSHIPS IN SPACE

The general rule is to use:

IN	for an enclosed space
AT	for a point
ON	for a surface

Here are some specific guidelines for their use in American English:

ON	
for a floor in a house/building	Our workplace is <i>on the 10th floor</i> .
being on a surface	You'll be welcomed by the piles of papers <i>on top of every table</i> .
covering the surface of, being held by, or connected to	We could hang this picture <i>on the wall</i> next to the door.
for a certain side (left, right)	Our house is the first <i>on the left</i> after the post office.
next to or along the side of	Strasbourg is <i>on the border of France and Germany</i> .
used for showing some methods of travelling	I love travelling <i>on trains</i> . It'd be quicker to get there <i>on foot</i> .
IN	
inside a container, room, building, vehicle etc	He had left his passport <i>in his coat pocket</i> . She's downstairs <i>in the living room</i> . There's room for all of us <i>in Dad's car</i> .
in an area, city, or country	They used to live <i>in Paris</i> , but now they're somewhere <i>in Austria</i> .
within an object, space, or substance	We noticed a crack <i>in the wall</i> .
in the air/in the sky/in space	There wasn't a cloud <i>in the sky</i> .
AT	
used to show an exact position or particular place	I work for a local advertising company that's located <i>at the heart of Seoul</i> . I'll give you my number <i>at work/home/the office</i> . She's sitting <i>at the table</i> in the corner. She's staying <i>at the Clarence Hotel</i> .
addresses	We live <i>at 23 Brookfield Avenue</i> .
OF	
used for saying which specific thing belonging to a more general type you are referring to	The two medium-sized glass windows allow you to have a glimpse <i>of the busy streets of Seoul</i>
used for saying what something is part of	He moved to the far side <i>of the bed</i> . The roof <i>of the church</i> was damaged.

NO PREPOSITIONS	
downstairs downtown inside outside upstairs uptown	Grandma went upstairs. Grandpa went home. (NOT Grandpa went to home.) They both went outside.

Unnecessary Prepositions

- ☆ The book fell off ~~of~~ the desk.
- ☆ He threw the book out ~~of~~ the window.
- ☆ She wouldn't let the cat inside ~~of~~ the house.
- ☆ Where did they go ~~to~~?
- ☆ Put the lamp ~~in-back-of~~ the couch. [use "behind" instead]
- ☆ Where is your college ~~at~~?



Topic 5

Do you have a dress code in your company? Are you allowed to wear casual clothing at work? Which do you prefer, casual or formal office attire?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Company's policy on dress code
Body	Normal workday attire
	Exception to the policy
	Speaker's clothing preference
Conclusion	Thought about the work attire

Since our company is in the field of advertising, the management doesn't **implement** a strict dress code. In a normal *day-to-day* work, we are allowed to wear *smart casual* clothing provided that it's not too **ragged** for men and **flaunt** for women. We just have to make sure that they look **decent**. On the other hand, we are **obliged** to be in formal **attire** when dealing with clients, especially for important projects. We have to *religiously* follow this to leave a good **impression** on our customers. Without doubt, being in formal clothes makes one look *highly-respectable* and **competent**, but I still prefer wearing casual attire because it's more comfortable. I believe that an employee who feels uncomfortable because of his attire can feel **anxious** and unhappy, while an employee wearing comfortable clothing feels more relaxed. Therefore, the **latter** is more likely to work effectively than the *former*. What really matters is how you *carry yourself* with whatever attire you have.

Vocabulary:

Implement	to put a plan or system into operation
Strict	exacting in enforcement, observance, or requirement
Ragged	not in good condition; torn
Flaunt	to show or make obvious something you are proud of in order to get admiration
Decent	socially acceptable or good
Obliged [to]	to force someone to do something, or to make it necessary for someone to do something
Attire	clothes, especially of a particular or formal type
Impression	an idea or opinion of what something is like
Competent	able to do something well
Anxious	worried and nervous
Latter	being the second of two persons or things mentioned

Idioms and Expressions:

Day-to-day

happening every day as part of your normal life

Useful Expressions

- In a normal day-to-day work, we are allowed to wear **smart casual** clothing provided that it's not too ragged for men and flaunty for women.
 - ❖ **Smart casual:** consists of dress trousers, a long-sleeve dress shirt, leather loafers, dress socks, a belt, and, if appropriate, a sport coat or blazer for men; consists of slacks or a skirt, a blouse, belt, a jacket, a vest, or a sweater coordinated to the outfit

Other related expressions:

- ❖ **Formal business attire:** the standard dress code for men and women is a suit, a jacket, and pants or a dress skirt
- ❖ **Dress-down Friday:** the day on which workers are allowed to wear more casual dress

- We have **to religiously** follow this to leave a good impression on our customers.
- ❖ **Religiously:** doing something regularly

- ☆ He visits his mother *religiously* every week.
- ☆ My son watches Sesame Street *religiously*.
- ☆ If you want to lose weight, then you need to exercise *religiously*.

- Without doubt, being in formal clothes makes one look **highly-respectable** and competent.
- ❖ **Highly-respectable:** considered to be socially acceptable because of good character, appearance or behavior

- ☆ He had an apparently *highly respectable* medical practice.
- ☆ Her fiancé comes from a *highly-respectable* family.
- ☆ This part of the city has become *highly-respectable* in the last ten years.

- Therefore, **the latter** is more likely to work effectively than the former.
- ❖ **Latter:** should only be used to refer to the second of the two items

- ☆ She offered me more money or a car and I chose *the latter*.
- ☆ Between captain and major, the *latter* is the higher rank.
- ☆ Many people choose to go by hovercraft rather than use the ferry, but I prefer *the latter*.
 - ❖ **Former:** the first of two people, things or groups previously mentioned
- ☆ Of the two suggestions, I prefer the *former*.
- ☆ Both Williams and Andrews claim the property. The *former* insists that it was a gift.

- What really matters is how you **carry yourself** with whatever attire you have.
 - ❖ **Carry yourself:** To behave or conduct (oneself) in a specified manner.

- ☆ You can tell she's a dancer from the way that she *carries herself*.
- ☆ When you don't look good, it changes the way you *carry yourself* and interact with other people.
- ☆ Pay attention to how you *carry yourself*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What kind of attire is prohibited in your workplace? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Does the dress code in the office make you feel less or more productive? How does it affect your mindset? Do you wish that you could wear something else?
- 3) I'm sorry, but there is a problem that you need to solve. Tomorrow is your first day at your new company, but you forgot to ask what the dress code is. Call the HR manager, and ask three to four questions about the dress code policies in your new company.

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ We are obliged to be in formal attire when **dealing** with clients, especially for important projects.
- ☆ Without a doubt, **being** in formal clothes makes one look highly-respectable and competent, but I still prefer **wearing** casual attire because it's more comfortable.

WHAT ARE GERUNDS?

In the sentences above, the words *dealing*, *being* and *wearing* are called **gerunds**. Gerund is another type of *verbal*. It functions as a noun and have an –ing ending. Since gerunds are derived from verbs and have an –ing ending, they do express action. However, because gerunds function as nouns, they occupy slots traditionally held by nouns in sentences such as subjects, direct objects and objects of prepositions.

Uses of Gerunds in Sentences	
As a subject	<i>Swimming</i> in the winter can boost your immune system.
As a direct object	A successful chef must enjoy <i>cooking</i> .
As an indirect object	He gives <i>gardening</i> all his attention.
As the object of the preposition	I am tired of <i>waking</i> up too early.
As a predicate nominative	Her worst fault is <i>lying</i> .
As an appositive	His newest hobby, <i>arranging</i> flowers, gives him pleasure.

IMPORTANT!

GERUNDS VS. INFINITIVES

Gerunds and Infinitives are both *verbal forms* that act as *nouns*. Gerunds end in **-ing**, such as swimming, walking, or laughing. Infinitives are the basic verb form with the particle *to*, as in to swim, to walk, or to laugh. Sometimes it can be difficult to know whether it's best to use a gerund or an infinitive in a sentence.

#1 Only gerunds can be the object of the preposition.

- ✗ I can't leave a painting **without to** *finish* it.
- ✓ I can't leave a painting **without** *finishing* it.
- ✗ Are we talking **about to** *play* basketball on Saturday?
- ✓ Are we talking **about** *playing* basketball on Saturday?
- ✗ We are talking about **to** *write* in English.
- ✓ We are talking **about** *writing* in English.

#2 Gerunds are often used when actions are real, concrete or completed.

- ☆ I stopped *smoking*. (The smoking was real, and it happened until I stopped.)
- ☆ I remembered *doing* my homework. (The person speaking did it (his homework) first and then remembered doing it.)

#3 Infinitives are often used when actions are unreal, abstract, or future.

- ☆ I stopped **to** *smoke*. (I was doing something else, and I stopped; the smoking was just about to happen.)
- ☆ I remembered **to do** my homework. (The person speaking remembered he had some homework first and then did it.)

Topic 6

Tell me how you get from your house to work everyday from beginning to end. How long does it usually take you to get to work?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Means of transportation used
Body	Typical departure time
	Speaker's reason for choosing transportation
	Deviation to the routine
Conclusion	Thought about the transportation

I usually go to work by subway because there is a station just *within walking distance* from my house. I go there *on foot* for 5 minutes *or so* at around 6:30 in the morning to avoid the *rush hour*. My home is just an hour away from my work, but I'd rather go at a fast **pace** to be able to eat breakfast at our company's **cafeteria**. I **alight** the train after 20 minutes and walk again for 10 minutes to reach my office. I prefer the subway because aside from its **proximity** to my house, it moves *at a good clip*. However, I drive to work on Fridays because I need to go to my hometown and spend the weekend with my family. Sometimes, seeing nothing new by train bores me, but I'd prefer it that way than be stuck in the traffic.

Vocabulary:

Pace	the speed at which someone or something moves
Cafeteria	a restaurant (often in a factory, a college or an office building) where people collect food and drink from a serving area and take it to a table themselves after paying for it
Alight	to get out of a vehicle, especially a train or bus
Proximity	the state of being near in space or time

Idioms and Expressions:

Rush hour	the busy part of the day when towns and cities are crowded, either in the morning when people are travelling to work, or in the evening when people are travelling home
On foot	to travel by walking
At a good clip	rapidly

Useful Expressions

- I usually go to work by subway because there is a station just **within walking distance** from my house.

❖ **Within walking distance:** close enough to walk to

☆ Is the train station *within walking distance*?

☆ The great thing about the house is that the ocean is *within walking distance*.

☆ They live *within walking distance* from my house, but luckily I don't see them much.

- I go there on foot for 5 minutes **or so** at around 6:30 in the morning to avoid the rush hour.

❖ **Or so :** approximately

☆ They spent an hour *or so* searching for the missing file.

☆ They raised two hundred pounds *or so* for charity.

- **Aside from its proximity** to my house is that it moves **at a good clip**.

❖ **Aside from :** except for

☆ Money continues to be a problem but *aside from* that we're all well.

☆ I hardly watch any television, *aside from* news and current affairs.

❖ **Proximity :** the state of being near in space or time

☆ The best thing about the location of the house is its *proximity* to the town centre.

☆ We chose the house for its *proximity* to the school.

❖ **At a good clip :** rapidly

☆ When you passed us you were going *at a pretty good clip*.

☆ We set off *at a good clip*, but we gradually slowed down.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have you ever met any difficult situation while on your way to work, like traffic jams or accidents?
- 2) Have you ever experienced using a different kind of transportation than you usually do in your daily routine? When was it? Why did you have to take a different route or method of transportation? Tell me about your experience with as much detail as possible.
- 3) You are going to need a ride from a friend in order to get to work tomorrow morning. Call your friend and tell him what you need, then ask three or four questions to find out everything you need to know about traveling with him to work tomorrow morning.

Grammar Pointer

In the previous chapter, we studied the prepositions *in*, *on* and *at* to talk about places and locations. The sentences below will show that the prepositions *in*, *on* and *at* are also used to talk about time.

- ☆ I go there on foot for 5 minutes or so **at** around 6:30 **in** the morning to avoid the rush hour.
☆ However, I drive to work **on** Fridays because I need to go to my hometown and spend the weekend with my family

In this unit, we'll study their correct usage.

IN	months, years, centuries and long periods
AT	for precise time
ON	days and dates

IN	
Month	My birthday is <i>in July</i> .
Year	I was born <i>in 1989</i> .
Decade	Our country's economy was not good <i>in the 1960s</i> .
Century	Rome was founded <i>in the eighth century BC</i> .
Era	<i>In the Jurassic era</i> , the most vicious dinosaurs dominated the Earth.
Season	I'll be there <i>in winter</i> .
Expressions	I'll be with you <i>in a second</i> . Go ahead. I'll be along <i>in a while</i> . I have a meeting <i>in the morning</i> . I take a shower <i>in the evening</i> . She arrived <i>in time</i> .

AT	
Hour	We'll start the meeting <i>at 6 o'clock</i> .
Time of Day	It's quiet here <i>at noon</i> .
Expressions	Our team always eats out <i>at the end of the month</i> . <i>At the beginning of the week</i> , we have a special meeting. We finished eating <i>at the same time</i> . Mr. Smith is not around <i>at the moment</i> . She's not home <i>at present</i> . Let's call later.
ON	
Date	I was born <i>on March 27, 1988</i> .
Days of the week	I drive to work <i>on Fridays</i> because I need to go to my hometown.
Special days/holidays	Sam Young will return <i>on Chuseok</i> . My busy father will still come <i>on my birthday</i> .
Expressions	He always comes <i>on the dot</i> . I hope he'll be here <i>on time</i> .

IMPORTANT!

When we say **last, next, every, this** we do not also use **at, in, on**.

- ☆ I went to Ulsan last August. (**not** in last August)
- ☆ They're coming back next Thursday. (**not** on next Thursday)
- ☆ I go home every New Year. (**not** at every New Year)
- ☆ Our manager will call you this evening. (**not** in this evening)

Other Prepositions	Meanings
I'll be there <i>by</i> six o'clock.	I'll arrive at six or before.
I'll be there <i>until</i> six.	I'll leave at six.
I won't be there <i>until</i> six.	I'll arrive at six, not before.
<i>By</i> November, the weather had become very cold.	Before November, it got colder, and it was very cold in November.
I'll be there <i>from</i> three <i>to</i> six.	I'll arrive at three and leave at six.

Topic 7

Where do you usually eat lunch and who do you have lunch with at work? Do you use the cafeteria in the company or do you go out for lunch? Tell me with as much as you can about lunch time at work.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Place where you eat and the people you eat with
Body	Details about the place, food served and owner
	Usual kind of lunch eaten by the speaker
	Activities done over lunch
Conclusion	Future plans regarding how to spend lunch time

Our company doesn't have a cafeteria, so I always eat lunch outside with my co-workers. Fortunately, there are a number of restaurants serving delicious food for lunch. My colleagues and I like to go to an old Korean restaurant which is **well-known** for its seollongtang (a kind of broth soup made from beef). It costs 7,000 won which is considered **reasonable** for its taste. I feel that I get great *value for my money*. The owner, a woman in her sixties, has been making it using her own **recipe**. She also offers delicious kimchi and other **complimentary side dishes**. We usually **go Dutch** except when someone proposes to give a **treat**. Sometimes, I enjoy light lunch like noodles or hamburger when I don't have enough time. As you know, lunch is the time when we can relax or talk with each other about our interests or concerns. However, some of them use it for doing certain activities or learning something. As for myself, I'm thinking of taking Chinese lessons next month.

Vocabulary:

Recipe	a set of instructions telling you how to prepare and cook food, including a list of what food is needed for this
Reasonable	not too expensive; fair
Complimentary	free
Side dish	a portion of food served in addition to the main dish
Treat	to buy or pay for something for another person

Idioms and Expressions:

Well-known	known or recognized by many people
Go Dutch	each person participating in a shared activity pays for himself or herself, rather than any one person paying for anyone else

Useful Expressions

- I get great **value for my money**.
❖ **Value for money**: good quality at cheap price

- ☆ The holiday was great *value for money*.
☆ Most customers are looking for *value for their money* rather than cutting-edge fashion.
☆ The store brand items are great *value for money*.

- She also offers delicious kimchi and other **complimentary** side dishes.

Complimentary: free

- ☆ The producer gave me *complimentary* tickets that would have cost me \$500 if I had to pay for them.
☆ Some hotels' *complimentary* breakfasts consist only of doughnuts and coffee.

Other usage:

- ❖ **Complimentary**: praising or expressing admiration for someone
☆ Our guests said some very *complimentary* things about the meal I'd cooked.

- We usually **go Dutch** except when someone proposes to **treat** others.

❖ **Go Dutch**: each person participating in a shared activity pays for himself or herself, rather than any one person paying for anyone else.

- ☆ How about dinner tonight? We'll *go Dutch*, okay?
☆ Is it still considered a date if you *go Dutch*?
☆ I don't want you to pay for my ticket. Let's *go Dutch*.
❖ **Treat**: to buy or pay for something for another person

- ☆ Put your money away - I'm going to *treat* you (to this).
☆ I'm going to *treat* myself to a new pair of sandals.
☆ Bob *treated* us all to dinner at an expensive restaurant.

Points of Discussion

- 1) If you invite one of your clients to lunch, where do you like to bring him/her? Where is it located and what is it famous for? Describe the place with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Tell me about a recent team/department gathering. When was it? Why did your team/department get together? Please give me a full description of the event from beginning to end.

Grammar Pointer

Even the most convincing ideas in the world expressed in the most beautiful sentences will move no one unless those ideas are properly connected. Thus, you need to use words that will establish logical connections between them. Use **transitional words or phrases** to connect each stage of your thinking clearly with the next.

Take a look at these two sentences below. Notice how the relationship between the two ideas are clarified using the transitional word *however*.

Lunch is the time when we can relax or talk with each other about our interests or concerns. **However**, some of them use it for doing certain activities or learning something.

There are many kinds of transitional words. In this unit, we'll focus on those showing contrast. It is important to understand their meanings before you use them. Often, there exists a slight, but significant, difference between two apparently similar words.

Transitional Word/Phrase	Usage	Example
However	used when you are saying something that seems surprising after your previous statement, or that makes your previous statement seem less true. It is similar to <i>but</i> .	The president was confident of success. His advisers were not so sure, however .
On the contrary	used to show that you think or feel the opposite of what has just been stated	A: Didn't you find the film exciting? B: On the contrary , I nearly fell asleep half way through it!

On the other hand	used to show two sides of an issue. It's similar to "conversely," but it doesn't always describe an opposite situation.	Living in a cold climate is difficult for some people; on the other hand , there are many fun winter activities, such as sledding, that you can't do in a warm climate.
Otherwise	used for saying that if one thing does not happen or is not true, something else will happen, usually something bad. It's very similar to "or" and "or else."	I hope the weather improves. Otherwise , we'll have to cancel the picnic.
	used when you are trying to show that something must be true, by saying that the situation would be different if it was not true	He must be fairly intelligent, otherwise he wouldn't have got into university.
Instead	used for saying that one person, thing, or action replaces another. It is similar to "or."	I am not going out tonight. Instead , I will stay home and watch a video.
Nevertheless	similar to "however," "yet" and "even so." We use "nevertheless" to present a fact that is in contrast to some other fact. "Nevertheless" usually goes in front of an independent clause, but it can also be used at the end of a clause.	Owning a house can cost a lot of money; nevertheless , home ownership is a big part of living the American dream.
Conversely	used for introducing a sentence, or part of a sentence, which says something that is the opposite of the other part	If we do nothing to improve our sales this company will fail, and conversely , our competition will thrive.

CHOOSING TRANSITIONAL WORDS

#1 Think about the relationship you want to convey.

- ❖ What is the connection between this sentence and the sentence or paragraph before it?
- ❖ What do you want the reader to understand about the relationship between them?

#2 Select a category and a word within that category which best conveys that information.

- ❖ If the relationship is too complex to explain with just one word, try using a whole phrase or even a whole sentence.
- ❖ Avoid repetition; use different transition words in the same category if necessary.

#3 Remember that transition words can change the whole meaning of a sentence.

- ❖ The wrong transition word can make a sentence confusing or even nonsensical.

Topic 8

Have you met any difficult situation at work? Please tell me a little bit about what it was and how you overcame it.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Difficult situation encountered
Body	Reasons of the conflict
	Effects of the conflict
	How the conflict was dealt with
Conclusion	Resolution

Yes, I have. I had a co-worker who was very difficult to work with. He would always get very **critical** of my ideas. Because of this, we often **clashed** at meetings. It went *to the point* where my co-worker was just **itching** to *pounce on the slightest* errors I made, which in turn made me look for his faults too. Usually, we would *smooth things over* and pretend everything is normal but in reality, it's not. His **vexing** behavior **persisted**, so I tried to avoid him as much as I could. This had been going on for a while until one day I decided to *bite the bullet* and tried to resolve our issue. We celebrated New Year at work that time and I took that chance to talk with him. We talked *heart-to-heart* and apologized to each other. I realized he's just very **competitive**. Since then, we were able to work effectively together and appreciate each other's *constructive criticisms* at our project meetings.

Vocabulary:

Critical	inclined to judge severely and find fault
Clashed	to come into conflict
Itching	to want to do something very much and as soon as possible
Slight	small in amount or degree
Vexing	extremely annoying or displeasing
Persisted	refuse to stop
Competitive	wanting very much to win or be more successful than other people
Constructive	useful and intended to help or improve something
Criticism	opinion or judgment about the good or bad qualities of something or someone

Idioms and Expressions:

Bite the bullet	to force yourself to do something unpleasant or difficult, or to be brave in a difficult situation
Heart-to-heart	a serious conversation between two people, usually close friends, in which they talk honestly about their feelings

Useful Expressions

➤ It went **to the point** where my co-worker was just itching to **pounce on** the slightest errors I make.

❖ **To the point:** to the extent

☆ The service was very slow *to the point* being unusable.

☆ He was badly assaulted *to the point* being unrecognizable.

☆ The lawyer has been very harsh lately. He even goes *to the point* of accusing the witnesses for the deaths.

❖ **Pounce on:** to immediately criticize a mistake

☆ He knows that his critics are waiting to *pounce on* any slip that he makes.

☆ My colleague *pounced on* me because of a mistake in my report.

➤ Usually, we would **smooth** things **over** and pretend everything is normal.

❖ **Smooth something over:** to make problems, difficulties or disagreements less serious or easier to solve, usually by talking to the people involved

☆ Would you like me to try to *smooth* things *over* between you and your parents?

☆ He *smoothed over* my disappointment with kind words.

➤ I **took that chance** to talk with him.

❖ **Take the chance:** use the opportunity

☆ You should *take the chance* to travel while you're still young.

☆ I had two hours left before my meeting, and I *took the chance* to relax.

➤ We talked **heart-to-heart** and apologized to each other.

❖ **Heart-to-heart:** a serious conversation between two people, usually close friends, in which they talk honestly about their feelings

☆ We had a *heart-to-heart* over a bottle of wine.

☆ We need to talk *heart-to-heart* about her coming marriage.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Now you are in a situation where you cannot finish your work on its due date. Explain it to your boss with several reasons and assure him with how you'll complete it by next week.
- 2) Tell me about a time when you had to deal with a co-worker who wasn't doing his/her fair share of the work. What did you do and what was the outcome. Tell me about that incident with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

There are two principals past tenses used to make general statements about the past: The **past simple** and the **past continuous**. The two tenses are quite different.

Let's take a look at the following sentences:

☆ I *had* a co-worker who *was* very difficult to work with.

(Though the time here is not stated, it is clear from the context that that the action or situation was finished. We use the **past simple**.)

☆ It went to the point where my co-worker *was just itching* to pounce on the slightest errors I made.

(Here, we are talking about talk about an action or situation that lasted for some time in the past, and whose duration time is unknown or unimportant. We use the **past continuous**.)

Let's discuss in detail the differences between the two:

	Usage	Examples	Form
Past Simple	expresses event or situation that began and ended at a particular time in the past (anytime before now).	I <i>finished</i> my homework last Friday. It <i>snowed</i> yesterday again. John <i>studied</i> English verbs for ten days.	Regular verbs: verb + d/ed Irregular verbs
Past Continuous	used when one action in progress is interrupted by another action in the past.	I <i>was talking</i> with James when the telephone rang . He <i>was writing</i> an article when we arrived .	Subject+ was/were + verb+ -ing
	used to talk about two or more activities happening at the same	He <i>was writing</i> an article while it <i>was raining</i> . I <i>was watching</i> TV and Barbara <i>was reading</i> a book.	

Signal Words	
Past Simple	yesterday last week a month ago in 2002
Past Continuous	when, while, as long as

Topic 9

Tell me a little bit about the achievement that you have made in your work. How did you contribute to it and does your company have any reward system for it?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Greatest achievement
Body	Motivation for the accomplishment
	How it was attained/ skills employed
Conclusion	Impact of the achievement

My greatest achievement since working in our company was **spearheading** the investigation of a **bottleneck** in our production line. For years, the management **acknowledged** the need to redesign the department layout, but was **reluctant** because of the **complexity** of the task. *Equipped* with experience, skills and research, I was able to introduce a system which is very timely, effective and acceptable to the operators. As the production units were in a more efficient sequence, our production *increased by leaps and bounds*. It also reduced our operating costs by about 10%. Because it is *running smoothly*, this layout design has been **adopted** by all our factories. The team was not given a bonus, but the success of this project was a **significant** factor in my promotion as a manager.

Vocabulary:

Spearhead	to lead something
Bottleneck	a place or stage in a process at which progress is impeded
Acknowledge	to accept, admit or recognize something
Reluctant	unwillingness to do something
Complexity	when something has many parts and may be difficult to understand or find an answer to
Equip	having the skills needed to do something
Adopt	to decide to start using a particular idea, plan, or method
Significant	important

Idioms and Expressions:

Increased by leaps and bounds	to increase or grow by large increments
--------------------------------------	---

Useful Expressions

- My greatest achievement since working in our company was **spearheading** the investigation of a bottleneck in our production line.

❖ **Spearhead:** to lead something

☆ Joe Walker will be *spearheading* our new marketing initiative.

☆ The troop who *spearheaded* the rescue mission was successful.

❖ **Bottleneck:** a place or stage in a process at which progress is impeded

☆ The launch of the new tablet is somewhat limited because manufacturing *bottleneck* impacted its production.

☆ The new program will ease production *bottlenecks* and reduce delivery times.

☆ We have not identified the *bottleneck* in our system.

- **Equipped** with experience and skills and research, I was able to introduce a system which is very timely, effective and acceptable to the operators.

❖ **Equip:** having the skills needed to do something

☆ The training had *equipped* her to deal with emergency situations.

☆ We aim to *equip* young graduates for a competitive business environment.

Other usage:

❖ **Equip:** to provide a person, object, or place with the things that they need for a particular purpose

☆ They received a grant to build and *equip* a new dental clinic.

- Because it is **running smoothly**, this layout design has been adopted by all our factories.

❖ **Run smoothly:** without difficulty, problems, or delays

☆ For work to *run smoothly*, proper preparations must be made.

☆ The project *ran smoothly* from start to finish.

❖ **Adopt:** to decide to start using a particular idea, plan, or method

☆ I think it's time to *adopt* a different strategy in my dealings with him.

☆ The new tax would force companies to *adopt* energy-saving measures.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Is your job performance evaluated on a regular basis? Tell me about your last performance appraisal. What was the result? Do you think it is fair and accurate? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Tell me about the time when you worked on a certain project independently. Did you like it, or do you prefer to work with a group of people on a team? How did you handle it? Tell me your experience with as much detail as possible.
- 3) Most businesses in North America compensate their employees according to the "merit principle." Businesses in many other parts of the world have traditionally relied on seniority to determine how much pay and other benefits a worker should receive. Which do you think is the better system? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each?

Grammar Pointer

We have learned in the previous unit that the **past simple** is used to express a finished event or situation.

The management **acknowledged** the need to redesign the department layout, but **was** reluctant because of the complexity of the task.

We can also use the **present perfect** to talk about things that happened in the past. However, in this tense, we are not interested in **when** you did something. The exact time is not important.

This layout design **has been adopted** by all our factories.

Let's discuss in detail the differences of the past simple and present perfect.

Present Perfect Simple	Past Simple
Unfinished actions that started in the past and continue to the present: ☆ I've known Julie for ten years (and I still know her).	Finished actions: ☆ I knew Julie for ten years (but then she moved away and we lost touch).

<p>A finished action in someone's life (when the person is still alive: life experience):</p> <p>☆ My brother has been to Mexico three times.</p>	<p>A finished action in someone's life (when the person is dead):</p> <p>☆ My great-grandmother went to Mexico three times.</p>
<p>A finished action with a result in the present:</p> <p>☆ I've lost my keys! (The result is that I can't get into my house now).</p>	<p>A finished action with no result in the present:</p> <p>☆ I lost my keys yesterday. It was terrible! (Now there is no result. I got new keys yesterday).</p>
<p>With an unfinished time word (this week, this month, today):</p> <p>☆ I've seen John this week.</p>	<p>With a finished time word (last week, last month, yesterday):</p> <p>☆ I saw John last week.</p>

IMPORTANT!

- ❖ We use the past simple for past events or actions which have no connection to the present.
- ❖ We use the present perfect for actions which started in the past and are still happening now OR for finished actions which have a connection to the present.
- ❖ We CAN'T use the present perfect with a finished time word:
INCORRECT: I've been to the museum yesterday.

Topic 10

You will go on a vacation for one week and now you have to leave a voice message and inform one of your major clients about it. Explain your situation and leave your contact details.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Name and position
Body	Reason for calling
	Contact details of the speaker
Conclusion	Farewell remark

Hello, Mr. Jung. This is Ken Park from HR Department I'm calling to *let you know* that I am going to Japan for a vacation from Monday, January 23 to Friday, January 27. Mr. Andy Kim, our assistant manager, is *filling in* for me at that time. However, you may still call me if there are any problems, questions or issues to discuss *in detail*. You can *reach me* through my cellphone, or you can call my hotel at 669-5673. You can also send me an email at kenpark@hyundaimotors.com. Goodbye.

Idioms and Expressions:

Fill in	to take someone's place, substitute for; a person or thing that serves in place of another
In detail	including many facts or aspects of a situation

Useful Expressions

- I'm calling to **let you know** that I will be in Japan for a vacation.
 - ❖ **Let somebody know:** inform (somebody) of something

- ☆ I am writing to *let you know* about the recent developments of our project.
- ☆ I came to *let you know* that the employees will stage a demonstration tomorrow.

- Mr. Andy Kim, our assistant manager, will **fill in** for me at that time.
 - ❖ **Fill in for someone:** takesomeone's place, substitute for; a person or thing that serves in place of another

- ☆ The understudy had to *fill in* for her at the last minute.
- ☆ I can't come but my wife will *fill in* for me.
- ☆ I'm *filling in* for the receptionist at the moment.

- You may still call me if there are any problems, questions or issues to discuss **in detail**.
◆ **In detail:** including many facts or aspects of a situation

- ☆ She talked *in detail* about future plans for the school.
☆ We haven't discussed the matter *in detail* yet.
☆ The book described her sufferings *in graphic detail*.

- You can **reach me** through my cellphone, or you can call my hotel at 669-5673.
◆ **Reach someone:** to make contact or communication with (someone):

- ☆ We tried to *reach him* all day, but to no avail.
☆ The only way to *reach them* in the place where they're staying is by mail.
☆ I've been trying to *reach you* on the phone all day.

Points of Discussion

- 1) When was the last time you took a day off? What did you do? Who did you spend it with? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) What is your company's policy regarding time off? Does it offer traditional vacation time, sick and personal days or paid time off? Explain about it in detail.

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ **I am going to** Japan for a vacation from Monday, January 23 to Friday, January 27.
☆ Mr. Andy Kim, our assistant manager, **will be filling in** for me at that time.

The sentences above both express actions in the future. However, notice that we use different tenses for each.

There are several ways of **expressing future** time in English.

Present Continuous	Planned action in the near future	They can't play tennis with you tomorrow. They're working.
Be going to	Intentions and prior arrangements	I am going to Japan for a vacation from Monday, January 23 to Friday, January 27.
	Prediction based on what we see	Look at those clouds! It's going to rain.
Future Simple	With certain verbs: promise, predict, hope, expect	I promise you that I'll clean my room tomorrow.
	With conditions	If you smoke, you'll never be healthy.
	Quick Decision	Don't worry. I'll answer the phone.
Present Simple	future action is fixed (e.g. timetable)	The train leaves Detroit at 9pm tonight.
Future progressive	to express what will be in progress at a specific point of time in the future	Mr. Andy Kim, our assistant manager, will be filling in for me at that time.

FORM

Present Continuous	Be going to	Future Simple	Present Simple	Future progressive
to be (am, are, is) + verb + -ing	to be (am, are, is) + going to + verb	will + verb	3rd person singular (he, she, it) verb + -s	will + be + infinitive + -ing
am dancing	is going to travel	will study	washes	will be playing

Topic 11

I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. You are working for a motor company and now you are presenting your company's new car in a fair. Please introduce your product briefly to the other clients.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Product
Body	Specific details of the product
	Highlight of the product
	Target market
Conclusion	Why the product is the best choice

I am pleased to introduce you the new Hyundai Sonata Hybrid fresh off a full redesign last year. Now it comes with even more safety, technology and convenience offerings. It delivers fuel economy figures of 24 mpg in the city, and 35 mpg on the highway. As you can see, the new Hyundai Sonata is handsome, jazzy and a visual standout in its class. In addition, it features a revolutionary in-car technology such as Hyundai's new Blue Link infotainment, a touch screen navigation system, and backup camera among others. However, the most fascinating aspect of 2012 Hyundai Sonata is its safety assurance. It has earned a relatively rare five-star overall score in all safety test categories. Thus, it is a good choice for young drivers, families or empty-nesters. With a price tag of \$19,965, this new 2012 Hyundai Sonata is certainly the biggest bang for your buck.

Vocabulary:

Mpg	miles per gallon; the number of miles a vehicle travels using one gallon of fuel
Jazzy	very bright and colorful
Standout	an excellent or the best example of something
Revolutionary	completely new and having a great effect
Infotainment	a collection of hardware devices installed into automobiles, or other forms of transportation, to provide audio and/or audio/visual entertainment, as well as automotive navigation systems
Fascinating	extremely interesting
Aspect	feature
Relatively	in comparison with something else

Idioms and Expressions:

Fuel economy	the relationship between the amount of fuel a car uses and the distance it travels
Empty-nester	someone whose children have grown up, and no longer live with them
Bang for the buck	value for the money spent

Useful Expressions

- I am pleased to introduce you the new Hyundai Sonata Hybrid.
❖ Be pleased to do something: happy and satisfied to do something

☆ I'm *pleased to* announce the winners of the contest.
☆ You'll be *pleased to* hear that Dave can't come tonight!
☆ If there's anything we can do, we'd be *pleased to* help.

Now it **comes with** even more safety, technology and convenience offerings.

- ❖ Come with: to be provided together with something

☆ In those days, a car *came with* the job.
☆ All our computers *come with* a 3-year guarantee.

- The new Hyundai Sonata is handsome, jazzy and a visual **standout** in its class.
❖ Standout: an excellent or the best example of something

☆ While all the desserts are pretty good, the clear *standout* is the lemon pie.
☆ He was the *standout* in last Saturday's game.

- It features a revolutionary in-car technology such as Hyundai's new Blue Link infotainment, a touch screen navigation system, and backup camera **among others**.
❖ Among others: used to indicate that there are several more facts, things or people like the one or the ones mentioned, but that you do not intend to mention them all

☆ This house has several good features - central heating, a patio, *among others*.
☆ He is expected to be supported at the meeting by Mr. Skinner and Mr. Jones, *among others*.

- It has earned a **relatively** rare five-star overall score in all safety test categories.

❖ **Relatively:** in comparison with something else

☆ The situation is *relatively* calm now.

☆ The sums needed are *relatively* small.

- This new 2012 Hyundai Sonata is certainly **the biggest bang for your buck.**

❖ **Big bang for the buck:** value for the money spent

☆ I didn't get anywhere near the *bang for the buck* I expected.

☆ How much *bang for the buck* did you really think you would get from a twelve-year-old car—at any price?

Points of Discussion

- 1) How does your company advertise your product/services? What do you think of your company's ads? Do you think they are effective?
- 2) Have you ever experienced presenting your company's products/services to a large group of people? How was your experience? Tell me about it in detail.

Grammar Pointer

In the previous chapter, we have learned using comparative adjectives to compare two things. In this unit, we'll study how to express the extreme or highest degree of a quality.

The most fascinating aspect of 2012 Hyundai Sonata is its safety assurance.

In the sentence above, we use the **superlative form** to show that 2012 Hyundai Sonata has the most fascinating quality within its kind.

RULES FOR USING SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

For comparisons in larger groups, you must use the superlative. The superlative designates extremes: the best, the first, the worst, the last, etc.

SUPERIORITY

Short Adjectives: Add the + -est at the end of the word		
One-syllable adjectives	cold-the coldest	It is the coldest winter ever.
Variation: if the adjective ends in -e, just add -r	nice-the nicest	Paul is the nicest person I've met.
Variation: if the adjective ends in consonant, vowel, consonant, double the last consonant	big-the biggest	Seoul is the biggest city in Korea.
Variation: if the adjective ends in -y, change the y to i	pretty-the prettiest	I think Jane is the prettiest in our class.

Long adjectives: Use *most* before the adjective

Two-syllable adjectives not ending in -y	Modern-most modern	We have the most modern facilities.
all adjectives of 3 or more syllables	Expensive-most expensive	What is the most expensive car in the world?

EQUALITY

It doesn't exist in the superlative form.

INFERIORITY

Long Adjectives: the least...adjective

Long adjectives	Interesting-the least interesting	This is the least interesting movie of the year!
-----------------	-----------------------------------	---

Some adjectives are **irregular adjectives** and don't follow these rules. They change form considerably from one degree to the next. You need to study these changes carefully in order to recognize them easily.

Irregular Adjectives		
Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bad	worse	worst
far (degree)	further	furthest
far (distance)	farther	farthest
good	better	best
many	more	most
little	less	least
old	elder	eldest
well (healthy)	better	best

SUPERLATIVES WITHOUT THE

The superlative adjective **most** is sometimes used before an adjective without *the*.

- When 'most' means *very*
 - ☆ It is **most unfortunate**.
 - When we compare the same quality of a person in different situations
 - ☆ I work **best** in the evening. (Here my work is being compared in different situations.)
- Incorrect:** I work the best in the evening.

AVOID THESE ERRORS

#1 Double comparatives and superlatives

Incorrect: Solomon was *the most wisest* person on earth.

Correct: Solomon was **the wisest** person on earth.

Incorrect: He is *more cleverer* than his brother.

Correct: He is **cleverer** than his brother.

#2 Using the superlative form of adjective when comparing two things

Incorrect: Take *the shortest* of the two routes.

Correct: Take the **shorter** of the two routes.

Incorrect: He is *the smartest* of the two brothers.

Correct: He is the **smarter** of the two brothers.

Incorrect: Of the two plans this is **the best**.

Correct: Of the two plans this is **better**.

#3 Using the preposition *of* with singular nouns after superlatives

Incorrect: She is the most beautiful woman *of the world*.

Correct: She is the most beautiful woman **in the world**.

Incorrect: He is the fastest man *of the earth*.

Correct: He is the fastest man **on earth**.

NOTE: **OF** can be used before plural nouns.

★ Mary's house is the tallest **of all** the houses on the block.

#4 Comparing Absolute Adjectives

There are certain words that are considered to be absolute and so cannot be logically compared, like *perfect* and *unique*. These words are considered to be absolutes because, by definition, there is not a degree of comparison. Something is either perfect or it is not—there are no higher degrees of perfection.

Incorrect: Ernest wrote *the most perfect* correspondence today.

Correct: Ernest wrote a **perfect** correspondence today.

As you can see by the example above, the correspondence can be perfect, but it **CANNOT** be more than perfect.

Other examples of absolute adjectives:

Unique	Round	Square	Dead
Perfect	Opposite	Empty	

REVIEW OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

It is possible to change the degrees of comparison from positive to comparative or superlative and vice versa without altering the meaning of the sentence.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
No other boy is as tall as John.	John is taller than any other boy.	John is the tallest boy.
No other metal is as precious as gold.	Gold is more precious than any other metal.	Gold is the most precious of all metals.
Few girls in the class are as clever as Susie.	Susie is cleverer than most other girls in the class.	Susie is one of the cleverest girls in the class.

Chapter

3

School

- Topic 1. School and Major
 - Topic 2. Favorite Subject
 - Topic 3. Teacher you respect the most
 - Topic 4. The most memorable event during your school life
 - Topic 5. Part-time job
 - Topic 6. Volunteer work
 - Topic 7. Normal school day
 - Topic 8. Role Play: Inquiring about TOEIC class

Topic 1

Tell me a little bit about your school and what you majored in.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	School and major
Body	Details about school
	Reasons for choosing the major
Conclusion	Benefits/results brought by the educational attainment

I studied Computer Science at Kyungpook National University in Daegu. It is the second oldest national university and one of the leading research universities in Korea. It **houses** 15 colleges and 10 graduate schools and has two campuses. I went to Sankyuk Campus which is the main campus and is located in the eastern part of Daegu. The other campus is the medical campus and is located in the downtown area. My university *takes great pride* in its **extensive** and active **alumni**, many of whom are currently in leadership positions throughout Korean society. Kim Yoon Hwan, former Minister of State for Political Affairs, and Kim Soon Kwon who was a three-time Nobel Prize **nominee**, are some of them. I *took up* computer science because aside from the fact that I love computers, my university offers a *world-class* computer science program and had been supported by a human resource program of the Korean government. Thus, it *opened the doors* for many job opportunities for me.

Vocabulary:

House	to provide space for something
Extensive	having a great range
Alumni	plural form of alumnus; male graduates or former students of a school, college, or university
Nominee	someone who has been nominated for something

Idioms and Expressions:

Take pride	to feel proud of
Take up	to enter into a business, hobby or subject of study
World-class	of an international standard of excellence
Open the door	to allow something new to start

Useful Expressions

➤ It **houses** 15 colleges and 10 graduate schools and has two campuses.

❖ **House**: to provide space for something

☆ It will be difficult to *house* all the refugees.

☆ This building *houses* our executive staff.

➤ My university **takes great pride** in its extensive and active alumni, many of whom are currently in leadership positions throughout Korean society.

❖ **Take pride**: feel proud of

☆ She *took great pride* in her sons.

☆ He *takes great pride* in his recently finished project.

➤ I **took up** computer science.

❖ **Take up**: to enter into a business, hobby or subject of study

☆ Roger *took painting up* for a while, but soon lost interest.

☆ Peter will *take up* the management of the finance department.

Other usage:

❖ **Take up**: to fill a particular amount of space or time

☆ These files *take up* a lot of disk space.

➤ My university offers a **world-class** computer science program.

❖ **World-class**: of an international standard of excellence

☆ We are committed to making *world-class* products.

☆ Yuna is a *world-class* figure skater.

➤ It **opened the doors** for many job opportunities for me.

❖ **Open the door**: to allow something new to start

☆ The ceasefire *opens the door* to talks between the two sides.

☆ Dad's connections at the hospital have *opened doors* for Richard's colleagues at medical school.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I'd like to know what your school looks like. Please describe your school for me with as much detail as possible.
- 2) I'd like to know some of the rules you had to follow at your school. Which rules did you think were unfair? Did you ever get caught breaking any school rules?
- 3) Tell me about what you planned to do after finishing your major.

Grammar Pointer

In this unit, we will look at the differences in meaning of **other**, **another**, and **others**.

I went to Sankyuk Campus which is the main campus and is located in the eastern part of Daegu. **The other** campus is the medical campus and is located in the downtown area.

In the sentence above, we use **the other** to indicate that it is the remaining or the last one in a group of similar items.

To make it easier to understand, let's take a look at the following chart.

Singular	I read one book. Then, I read <u>another book</u> . Maybe later, I will read <u>another one</u> .	First, I ate one burger. Then, I ate the <u>other burger</u> . Now, there are no more burgers.
	I read one book. Then, I read <u>another</u> . Maybe later, I will read <u>another</u> .	First, I ate one burger. Then, I ate the other. Now, there are no more burgers.
Plural	I saw some children fighting, and I saw some <u>other children</u> playing.	Three of the pens on the table are mine, but the <u>other pens</u> are Karen's pens.
	I saw some children fighting, and I saw some <u>others</u> playing.	There are six pens on the table. Six of them are mine, but <u>the others</u> are Karen's pens.

ANOTHER

Another is formed from a combination of the words "an" and "other", and has a meaning similar to "one other".

Example:

- ☆ Please bring me *another* bottle.

It can precede only a **singular countable noun**.

- *Another* usually **cannot** be immediately preceded by a determiner.
Incorrect: *The another* student is nine years old.

OTHER

Other refers to the person or thing not the same as that already referred to. It can be used with **singular countable, plural countable or uncountable nouns**.

Examples:

- ☆ *The other door* is open. (singular countable)
- ☆ *The other streets* are paved. (plural countable)
- ☆ Do you have any *other luggage*? (uncountable)

- When used before a singular countable noun, other usually must be preceded by a **determiner**.

- ☆ Please pass me **the other** cup.
- ☆ I do not know **any other** way to do it.
- ☆ There must be **some other** explanation.

In these examples, *other* is used with the singular countable nouns *cup*, *way* and *explanation*, and is preceded by the determiners *the*, *any* and *some*.

- When *other* modifies a singular countable noun, the noun is sometimes omitted, particularly in the expression *one ... the other*.

- ☆ I have two pens. *One* is green and *the other* is blue.
- ☆ *One* of my parents is a teacher; *the other* is a doctor.

OTHERS

Others is a pronoun. It can be used to take the place of the word *other*, followed by a **plural countable noun**.

- ☆ Those trees are hemlocks; *the others* are pines.
- ☆ Ten people belong to the group, and five *others* are planning to join.

In the first example, *others* takes the place of the words **other trees**. In the second example, *others* takes the place of the words **other people**.

Topic 2

Could you tell me a little bit about your favorite subject in college? How did you get to like that subject and which area were you interested in studying?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Favorite subject
Body	Brief description of the subject
	Reasons for liking it
	Specific area of interest
Conclusion	General impact of the subject

I had always enjoyed my history classes because it allowed me to understand more about our past and how it is connected to the present. Interestingly, history was one of the subjects I disliked when I was younger. Listening to events which happened **throughout ancient** times would make me *die of boredom*. That all changed after I had a wonderful instructor who taught this subject when I was in high school. It was only during this time that I realized that this subject is not just about memorizing dates and historical figures from the past. It's also about understanding ourselves and the world around us. Although I now enjoy reading history in general, I *gravitate more towards* modern history because they are more **recognizable** and can easily be **related** to the world we live in today. Indeed, learning history allows us to understand and appreciate our world today.

Vocabulary:

Throughout	during the whole period of time
Ancient	of or from a long time ago
Recognizable	easy to recognize
Related	connected

Idioms and Expressions:

Die of boredom	to be very bored
Gravitate toward someone/something	to be attracted by or to move in the direction of something or someone

Useful Expressions

- **Interestingly**, history was one of the subjects I disliked when I was younger.
 - ❖ **Interestingly**: sometimes used to introduce a piece of information that the speaker finds strange and interesting

☆ *Interestingly enough*, Mark made no attempt to deny the rumor.
☆ *Interestingly*, none of their three children ever married.

- Listening to events which happened throughout ancient times would make me **die of boredom**.
 - ❖ **Die of boredom**: to be extremely bored

☆ I had nothing to do during that time, so I almost *died of boredom*.
☆ We sat there and listened politely, even though we almost *died of boredom*.

- I **gravitate** more towards modern history because they are more **recognizable** and can easily be related to the world we live in today.
 - ❖ **Gravitate**: to be attracted by or to move in the direction of something or someone

☆ He's on that age where he *gravitates* towards pretty girls.
☆ He was the sort of politician whom people *gravitated* towards.

- ❖ **Recognizable**: easy to recognize

☆ A *recognizable* logo is the key to success of our company.
☆ It is the most *recognizable* structure in the city.
☆ The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an instantly *recognizable* landmark.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What subjects don't you like? What don't you like about them? How did you cope up with it?
- 2) Were you given a lot of homework? Did you always complete it? How did you feel about it? Was there anything else you would have preferred to do?

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ I had a wonderful instructor.
- ☆ He taught this subject when I was in high school.

This pair of sentences can also be told in a neat way and in only one complete sentence. We can say:

I had a wonderful instructor **who** taught this subject when I was still in high school.

Notice that we use the word *who* to combine the two sentences. *Who* is a kind of relative pronoun. A **relative pronoun**, as the name suggests, works as a conjunction between two clauses and relates to the word it modifies in the dependent clause.

Note: Relative pronouns can be in both singular and plural forms and can act both masculine and feminine.

Relative Pronoun	Use	Example
Who	Subject or object pronoun used for people	I told you about the woman <i>who</i> lives next door.
Which	Subject and object pronoun used for animals or things	Do you see the cat <i>which</i> is lying on the roof?
	Referring to the whole sentence	He couldn't read <i>which</i> surprised me.
Whose	Possession for people, animal and things	Do you know the boy <i>whose</i> mother is a nurse?
Whom	object pronoun for people	I was invited by the professor <i>whom</i> I met at the conference.
That	subject or object pronoun for people, animals and things	I don't like the table <i>that</i> stands in the kitchen.

THAT, WHICH, WHO?

➤ WHO

refers only to **people**, never to things used in either restrictive or non-restrictive clauses

Examples:

restrictive clause:

I don't like people who are always criticizing others.

non-restrictive clause:

My father, who loves antiques, collects old books.

➤ WHICH

refers only to **things**, never to people used in both restrictive and non-restrictive clauses, but more often in non-restrictive clauses

Examples:

restrictive clause:

The plane which arrived late was from London.

non-restrictive clause:

My car, which is very old, breaks down often.

➤ THAT

refers to **people or things**
used in restrictive clauses only
used to identify a specific person, place, or thing

Examples:

The book that I read was very exciting.

The man that lives next door is very helpful.

IMPORTANT!

A relative pronoun (*who*, *which*, or *that*) is always placed next to the word, phrase or clause to which it refers. (This can be seen in all the examples above.)

RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES provide information which is crucial in understanding the meaning of the sentence. If you remove them, the sentence has a different meaning or no meaning at all.

NON-RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES provide interesting additional information which is not essential to understanding the meaning of the sentence.

Topic 3

Could you please tell me about the teacher you respected in your school? When did you meet him/ her and how did he/she influence you?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Teacher
Body	First meeting
	Influence of the teacher to you and others
Conclusion	Distinctive quality of the teacher that sets him out from the rest

I respect a lot of teachers in my school, but only one of them *stands out*. He was my political science professor whom I met during my last semester as a **sophomore** in college. He taught the subject with such **composure** that it was impossible not to be **immersed** in his discussion. Indeed, all of us gave our *undivided attention* to his lectures. Moreover, he taught us how to create laws and decisions for the **betterment** of the majority in society *in such a manner that* it appeared really easy to all of us. He made us realize that learning is exciting. His **reputation** as an excellent instructor and his good connection with the students make him truly respectable.

Vocabulary:

Sophomore	a person in the second year of carrying out an endeavor, especially of attending a school or college
Composure	calmness and control
Immerse	to become completely involved in something
Complexity	the complicated nature of something
Betterment	improvement
Reputation	the opinion that people have about how good or how bad someone or something is

Idioms and Expressions:

Stand out	to be much better than other similar things or people
------------------	---

Useful Expressions

- I respect a lot of teachers in my school but only one of them **stands out**.
❖ **Stand out:** to be much better than other similar things or people

☆ Your logo design aids you to *stand out* from the crowd.
☆ It simply *stands out* as an excellent school among many very good schools.
☆ Germany *stands out* as the leader in environmental reporting.

- He taught the subject with such composure that it was impossible not to be **immersed** in his discussion.
❖ **Immerse:** to become completely involved in something

☆ David was deeply *immersed* in student politics.
☆ She got some books out of the library and *immersed* herself in American history and culture.

Other usage:

- ❖ **Immerse:** to put something or someone completely under the surface of a liquid
☆ *Immerse* your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.

- Indeed, all of us gave our **undivided attention** to his lectures.
❖ **Undivided attention:** not distracted; wholly concentrated

☆ Please give the matter your *undivided attention*.
☆ If you just wait till I've finished this bit of work, I will give you my *undivided attention*.

- Moreover, he taught us how to create laws and decisions for the betterment of the majority in society **in such a manner that** it appeared really easy to all of us.
❖ **In such a manner that:** used to say that something is so great, so bad etc. that something else happens

☆ He lectured *in such a manner that* many in the audience found him impossible to understand.
☆ He is doing it *in such a manner that* others think it so easy.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Let's talk about a memory you have of a teacher. Maybe a teacher helped you out on something or a teacher got angry at you. Please tell me what you can remember about a teacher in detail.
- 2) There are two basic teaching styles: a) teachers who transmit their knowledge, and b) teachers who act as facilitators to the students' own learning process. Which of them, in your experience, is the most effective?
- 3) I'll give you a situation and ask you to act it out. Assume that your teacher is sick and is in the hospital. Call him/her and ask three or four questions about his/her condition.

Grammar Pointer

He was my political science professor *whom* I met during my last semester as a sophomore in college.

In this sentence, why do we use WHOM and not who? The correct usage of *who* and *whom* presents a lot of difficulties to many. The main reason for this is most likely that native English speakers (most notably in North America) tend to omit the use of *whom* both in written and (most commonly) in oral English. Using *whom* incorrectly, on the other hand, could give the impression that one is trying to come off as learned while in fact not entirely knowing what he or she is doing.

The following guidelines and examples may help you determine which one to use:

In English grammar, we have a term called **case**, which refers to pronouns. The case of a pronoun can be either **subject** or **object**, depending on its use in a sentence.

Subject	Object
I	me
he	him
she	her
we	us
they	them
who	whom

The pronoun *who* is used as a **subject**; *whom* is used as an *object*.

Subject	Verb	Object	
Sarah	saw	Jake.	
Who	saw	Jake?	
Sarah	saw	whom?	Whom did Sarah see? (formal) Everyday English: Who did you see?

'Whom' is used directly after a preposition.

Subject	Verb	Preposition	Object	
Who	played	with	Sam?	
Sam	played	with	whom?	<i>With whom</i> did Sam play? Conversational English: Who did you play with ?

In Relative Clauses

WHO: He was my political science professor *who* had received the most awards.
 WHOM: He was my political science professor *whom* I met during my last semester as a sophomore in college.

HOW CAN I DETERMINE WHICH ONE TO USE?

- Break up the sentence into two parts.
- ★ He was my political science professor. He (my political science professor) had received the most awards.
- ★ He was my political science professor. I met him (my political science professor) during my last semester as a sophomore in college.

IMPORTANT!

- If you use I, he, she, we, or they, then the correct form is *who*.
- If you use me, him, her, us, or them, then the correct form is *whom*.
- Generally, if you can omit the who/whom entirely, the correct form is *whom*. If you need it, then it's *who*.

Example:

☆ Janice is the student the teachers picked as outstanding. (Sentence makes sense without the who/whom structure, so the correct form is whom.)

QUESTIONS

- For questions, turn the question into a statement.

Example: (Who, Whom) should I invite to the dance?

I should invite – her – to the dance. (We used an object pronoun. Therefore, we'll use **WHOM**.)

Example: (Who, Whom) is the president of student government?

She is the president of student government.

(We used SHE. Therefore, we'll use **WHO**.)

Topic 4

I would like to know about a memorable event that happened to you during your school life. When was it? What exactly happened? Tell me about your experience with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Memorable event
Body	Background information about the event
	Experiences
	Lessons learned
Conclusion	Feelings towards that event

I will never forget the time when I was chosen as one of the **participants** in a student exchange program during my third year in college. For almost a year, I stayed at the University of Illinois where I had to study with students from other countries. It was a truly amazing experience because I came to represent my school and my country. Also, because of this, I experienced a lot of ‘firsts’ in my life—going to a totally unfamiliar place and living *on my own*, doing the laundry and buying daily **necessities**. I also learned how to be **frugal** and wise which became great **assets** in my life *later on*. However, it took me *quite some time* to **adapt** to that environment. I **strived** hard, and *in the long run*, I *got used to it*. Truly, participating in a foreign student exchange program can **enhance** one’s **transnational competence** which can be of interest to future employers. I just wish that more and more Korean students will be given an opportunity to *take part in* this kind of program.

Vocabulary:

Participant	a person who takes part in or becomes involved in a particular activity
Necessity	something that you need, especially in order to live
Frugal	spending very little money and only on things that are really necessary
Asset	a major benefit
Adapt	to become familiar with a new situation
Enhance	to improve the quality, amount or strength of something
Transnational	affecting or involving several different countries
Competence	a person’s range of skills or knowledge

Idioms and Expressions:

On my own	responsible for oneself; independent of outside help or control
In the long run	in the final analysis or outcome
Take part	to join in; participate

Useful Expressions

➤ I experienced a lot of ‘**firs**ts’ in my life—going to a totally unfamiliar place and living **on my own**, doing the laundry and buying daily necessities.

❖ **First:** something that has never happened or been done before

☆ He cooked me a meal, which was a *first* for him.

☆ These results are *firs*ts in the history of women's athletics.

❖ **On one’s own:** responsible for oneself; independent of outside help or control

☆ He is now out of college and *on his own*.

☆ Your grandfather did it all *on his own*.

➤ I also learned how to be frugal and wise which became great assets in my life **later on**.

❖ **Later on:** at a time in the future, or after the time you have mentioned

☆ What are you doing *later on* this evening?

☆ *Later on*, we could go and have a meal if you like.

➤ However, it took me **quite some time** to adapt to that environment.

❖ **Quite some time:** a very long time

☆ It has been *quite some time* since Anna’s dad passed away.

☆ I was so overjoyed when I got the chance to have a wonderful conversation with a friend that I haven’t seen for *quite some time*.

➤ **In the long run, I got used to it.**

❖ **In the long run:** at a time that is far away in the future

☆ Cutting jobs could be more expensive *in the long run* if we have to hire freelancers.

☆ Good management *in the long run* brought improved conditions for the workers.

☆ It seems a lot of effort, but I’m sure it’s the best solution *in the long run*.

❖ **Get used to something:** used to talk about the process of making something normal

- ☆ I have to *get used to* my noisy neighbors.
- ☆ You may not like the weather, but you need to *get used to* it.
- ☆ Students *got used to* waking up early during school days.

➤ I just wish that **more and more** Korean students will be given an opportunity to **take part** in this kind of program.

❖ **More and more :** used for saying that something is increasing in number or degree all the time

- ☆ *More and more* people are choosing to spend their holidays abroad.
 - ☆ As the situation grew steadily worse, he became *more and more* depressed.
- ❖ **Take part in:** to join in; participate
- ☆ She doesn't usually *take part in* any of the class activities.
 - ☆ They will be *taking part in* the discussions, along with many other organizations.

➤ Participating in a foreign student exchange program can enhance one's **transnational** competence.

❖ **Transnational :** affecting or involving several different countries

- ☆ McDonald's is a *transnational* company.
- ☆ The organization aims to combat *transnational* crime in Asia.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I'd like to know about your first day at school. What was your first impression? Tell me about it in detail.
- 2) There might have been a person (teacher, classmate, principal, school staff) who is memorable for you. Why is this person memorable? Tell me about him/her in detail.
- 3) I'd like to know about the most memorable project you've done. What was it? What process did you go through when you began working on it through when you finished the project? What made the project so memorable?

Grammar Pointer

Two voices occur in English grammar: **active voice** and **passive voice**. Voice doesn't mean the sound you make when you speak. It shows whether the subject of a sentence is doing the action, or having the action done to it.

ACTIVE VOICE

If the subject is performing the action, the sentence is in the active voice.

☆ I stayed in University of Illinois.

☆ I had to study with students from other countries.

In these sentences, the subject performs the action of the verb. The sentences are direct, and it clears who's doing what.

PASSIVE VOICE

☆ I was chosen as one of the participants in a student exchange program during my third year in college.

☆ More and more Korean students *will be given* an opportunity to take part on this kind of program.

In the sentences above, notice that the subjects are not performing the action and there are no direct objects. The subject receives the action instead.

Usually, active voice is the preferred method to use. It utilizes fewer words, is generally more direct and concise, and is a stronger way to state the sentence. However, there are times where using passive voice is preferred over active voice. These are when some situations are awkward or inappropriate to express in the active voice.

USES OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

The doer of the action is unimportant.	The pyramids <i>were built</i> thousands of years ago.
The doer of the action is unknown.	Several robberies <i>were committed</i> during the night.
The agent is common knowledge, and mentioning it would be redundant.	Lee Myung Bak <i>was elected</i> in 2008.
The emphasis of the sentence is on the action rather than on the person who does the action.	The message <i>was delivered</i> by John this afternoon.

Notice that a passive verb is always a verb phrase made from a form of ‘be plus the past participle of a verb’. The tense of the helping verb be determines the tense of a passive verb. The chart below provides a short conjugation in the passive voice of the verb *believe*.

The Verb Believe in the Passive Voice	
Present Simple	He is believed
Past Simple	He was believed
Future Simple	He will be believed
Present Perfect	He has been believed
Past Perfect	He had been believed
Future Perfect	He will have been believed
Present Continuous	He is being believed
Past Continuous	He was being believed

CHANGING ACTIVE TO PASSIVE

	Subject	Verb	Object	
Sentence	My classmates	will present	their report	tomorrow

Step 1: Move the object to the subject position.

The report will be presented

Step 2: Change the verb to the passive, making sure that BE takes the same tense as the verb in the active sentence.

The report

Step 3: Drop the subject.

The report will be presented tomorrow.

or move it to a position after the verb

The report will be presented by my classmates tomorrow.

CHANGING PASSIVE TO ACTIVE

	Subject	Verb	Object	
Sentence	The report	will be presented	by my classmates	tomorrow

Step 1: Move the object to the subject position. Do not use the preposition *by*.

My classmates

Step 2: Make the verb active. To make a passive verb active, take the main verb, and put it in the same tense as the helper.

My classmates will present

Step 3: Add the subject after the verb.

My classmates will present the report tomorrow.

Topic 5

Have you ever had a part-time job? Can you tell me about it?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Part-time job
Body	Reasons for taking the part-time job
	Advantages (or disadvantages)
Conclusion	Feelings towards having a part-time job

I worked as a part-time tutor in an academy for elementary school students when I was in my **junior** year in college. I was first attracted to the job because as a university student, it provided an opportunity to choose my own hours. It was nice to have a part-time job where I could work *a couple* of hours instead of working a longer **shift** that would *detract from* my own studying and personal life. I tutored mathematics and English every weekend as they are two of my favorite subjects and the most difficult subjects that students *struggle with*. Watching my **tutees** meet their academic goals was rewarding *in itself*, and it was a pleasure to be a part of that. However, my job as a tutor did not only **encompass** my students' development. I also learned a lot about general education, what it was like to work with kids, *all the while* learning to shape my teaching methods in order to meet the students' personal needs. As has been said, having a part-time job is challenging yet rewarding.

Vocabulary:

Junior	a student in the third year of a course that lasts for four years at a school or college
Shift	a period of work time where some people work during the day and some work at night
Tutee	one who is tutored
Encompass	to include a lot of people or things

Idioms and Expressions:

Detract from	to reduce the value, importance, or quality of something
Struggle with	to try hard to do something that you find very difficult

Useful Expressions

- I tutored mathematics and English every weekend as they are two of my favorite subjects and the most difficult subjects that students **struggle with**.

❖ **Struggle with:** to try hard to do something that you find very difficult

☆ He has been *struggling with* the problem of how to keep good workers from leaving.

☆ All his life, he has been *struggling with* illness.

- My job as a tutor did not only **encompass** the students' development.

❖ **Encompass:** to include a lot of people or things

☆ The student debates will *encompass* a range of subjects.

☆ The study *encompasses* the social, political, and economic aspects of the situation.

- I also learned a lot about general education, what it is like to work with kids, **all the while** learning to shape my teaching methods in order to meet the students' personal needs.

❖ **All the while:** all the time that something is happening

☆ She pretended to be asleep, but *all the while* she was watching him.

☆ There I was thinking you were hard at work and you were upstairs in bed *all the while!*

Points of Discussion

- 1) What kinds of part-time jobs were there and how were they? Do you think your part-time job was a helpful experience for your work now?
- 2) I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. You are interested in the part-time job advertisement that you saw in the newspaper. Call their office and ask three or four questions about it.
- 3) I'm sorry, but there is a problem that you need to solve. Your professor scheduled an important test in the afternoon. However, you have a part-time job at that time. Call your boss, explain the situation and give one or two suggestions on how you might compensate for it.

Grammar Pointer

You might have learned to never end a sentence with a preposition. That is actually associated with Latin grammar. While many aspects of Latin have made their way into the English language, this particular grammar rule is not suited for modern English usage. Sometimes ending a sentence in a preposition is accepted, sometimes preferred.

WHEN ENDING A SENTENCE WITH A PREPOSITION IS ALLOWED

- *If a sentence would not make sense without a preposition at the end, leave the preposition attached to the end of the sentence.*

They are two of my favorite subjects and the most difficult subjects that students struggle with.

Here, we end the sentence with the preposition *with*. However, if we remove the preposition, the sentence won't make sense.

They are two of my favorite subjects and the most difficult subjects that students struggle.

The sentence loses its meaning, so in a situation like this one, it is acceptable to leave the preposition at the end of the sentence

Other examples are:

- ☆ I wish he would **cheer up**.
- ☆ You should **leave it off**.

Often, what looks like a preposition in an English sentence is actually not a preposition at all. Instead, it is a part of the verb, to create a *phrasal verb*. These words are prepositions on their own, but when combined with certain verbs, become adverbial particles and part of these phrasal verbs.

Phrasal Verbs

give up	prepare for
grow up	study for
look for	talk about
look forward to	think about
look up	trust in
make up	work for
pay for	worry about

WH- QUESTIONS

Informal	Formal
Who is that gift for?	For whom is that gift? (very formal)
Who did you give your business card to ?	To whom did you give your number? (very formal)
What kind of movies are you interested in ?	In what kind of movies are you interested? (very formal)
What does she look like ?	Like what does she look? (not used)
Where do you come from ?	From where do you come? (extremely formal)

- *Do not use extra prepositions when the meaning is clear without them.*

Incorrect	Correct
Where did he go to ?	Where did he go?
Where did you get this at ?	Where did you get this?
I will go later on .	I will go later.

- If you opt not to use prepositions at the end of the sentence, you can reword it such as in the following examples:

☆ That is a situation I have not thought of = *That is a situation I have not considered.*

☆ It is behavior I will not put up with = *It is behavior I will not tolerate.*

Topic 6

Have you ever done any volunteer work during your schooldays? What kind of work did you join and why do you think it was so important?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Kind of volunteer work and name of organization
Body	Brief description of the organization
	Reason for volunteering
	Tasks in the organization
Conclusion	Future plans related to volunteering

Back in my college days, I was an active volunteer of an organization called Itaewon Global Village Center (IGVC). It **primarily** aims to *give a hand* to foreigners living in Seoul. Moreover, it promotes and **facilitates** understanding and **camaraderie** between the noncitizens and the locals. I **opted** to be part of this group than others because I believed in its **vision** and goals. Also, I like its educational services which include Korean Language Programs for the foreigners and English Programs for all residents. I served as a teacher's assistant for both programs. It was challenging, but I had so much fun and I learned a lot from those teachers. I must say that the experience was *one of a kind* and so rewarding. If I am given a chance to volunteer again for IGVC or other groups with similar objectives, I will surely *grasp it with both hands*.

Vocabulary:

Primarily	mainly
Facilitate	to make easier
Camaraderie	the quality of affording easy familiarity and sociability
Opt	to make a choice, especially for one thing or possibility in preference to any others
Vision	the ability to think about and plan for the future, using intelligence and imagination, especially in politics and business

Idioms and Expressions:

Give a hand	to help
One of a kind	used for saying that someone or something is completely different from other people or things
Grasp something with both hands	to take advantage of an opportunity when it happens

Useful Expressions

- **Back** in my college days, I was an active volunteer of an organization called Itaewon Global Village Center (IGVC).
- ❖ **Back:** used for talking about a period of time in the past

☆ *Back* in the '70s, disco music was very popular.
☆ She had a minor operation a few years *back*.
☆ Things were different *back* then.

- I **opted** to be part of this group than others because I believed in its **vision** and goals.
- ❖ **Opt:** to make a choice, especially for one thing or possibility in preference to any others

☆ After recent setbacks in the market, most people are now *opting* for low-risk investments.
☆ He *opted* not to go.

❖ **Vision:** the ability to think about and plan for the future, using intelligence and imagination, especially in politics and business

☆ He's a good day-to-day manager but he lacks *vision*.
☆ Tackling these challenges will require real *vision*.

Other usage:

❖ **Vision:** something seen in the imagination or in a dream
☆ God appeared to him in a *vision*.

❖ **Vision:** the ability to see or the sense of sight
☆ He is slowly losing his *vision*.

- I must say that the experience was **one of a kind**.
- ❖ **One of a kind:** used for saying that someone or something is completely different from other people or things

☆ Out of all the Chinese antiques that I own, this vase is *one of a kind*.
☆ Your new girlfriend, without doubt, is *one of a kind*. You have our blessing.

- If I am given a chance to volunteer again for IGVC or other groups with similar objectives, I will surely **grasp it with both hands**.
 - ❖ **Grasp something with both hands:** to take advantage of an opportunity when it happens
- ☆ If you get a second chance, *grab it with both hands*.
- ☆ If she has the opportunity to visit Paris, she should *grasp it with both hands*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What situations need volunteer workers? Can you think of ways to help people who need help? Tell me all the details.
- 2) I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. You are interested in joining an organization which does voluntary work. Call their office and ask three or four questions about their volunteer programs.

Grammar Pointer

Sometimes, we talk about actions or events in the future which are likely to happen or have a real possibility of happening. In the sample answer above, we have seen the following sentence:

If I am given a chance to volunteer again for IGVC or other groups with similar objectives, I will surely grasp it with both hands.

This sentence means that there is a possibility that I will be given a chance to volunteer again. In this condition, I will grasp it with both hands.

This type of sentence structure is called the **first conditional**. It is used to talk about things which are possible in the present or the future — things which *may happen*:

Examples	Explanation
If it rains , I will stay home.	Maybe it will rain—that's possible.
If you go to the party, she will be very happy.	Maybe you will go to the party—that's possible.
I will be sad if my soccer team loses the match.	Maybe my soccer team will lose the match—that's possible.
You will pass the exam if you study hard.	Maybe you will study hard—that's possible.

STRUCTURE

A first conditional sentence consists of two clauses, an ‘if’ clause and a main or ‘result’ clause. It doesn’t matter which clause comes first.

IF-CLAUSE	RESULT CLAUSE
simple present verb	Will/modal verb + base form of the verb
If it rains ,	I will stay home.
If you go to the party,	she will be very happy.

RESULT CLAUSE	IF-CLAUSE
Will/modal verb + base form of the verb	simple present verb
You will pass the exam	if you study hard.
You will be late	if you don't hurry.

IMPORTANT!

- We can use other modal verbs in place of ‘will’:
Can / could, may / might, should / ought to, must

- ☆ If you don't eat your dinner, you **can't** have an ice cream.
- ☆ If the climate keeps warming, the Arctic **might** be warm enough for swimming.
- ☆ If you finish everything on time, you **may/can** go home earlier.

Topic 7

I would like to hear about your normal school day. What do you do when you don't have classes? Where do you usually study? Tell me as much as you can.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement about normal school day
Body	Details regarding daily school routine
	Activities done during free time
Conclusion	Feelings towards daily school routine

My school day is very **typical**. It consists of the average university student's usual daily routine. I do a couple of hours of **self-study** in the morning. During this time, I usually *work on* my assignments which I didn't finish the previous night. I have three classes in the morning which start at 10 AM and end at 1 PM. I *get to* eat lunch at that time and have a chat with my classmates and friends. My afternoon schedule is not so **tight** as I only have one or two classes. Sometimes, my classmates and I go to the gym to play ping pong or to the music room in the library to **unwind**. On Tuesday and Thursday nights, I go to a self-study room and *hit the books* until 11 PM. As I wake up in the morning, I always wish for something special to happen— just to **break** my usual schedule.

Vocabulary:

Typical	showing all the characteristics that you would usually expect from a particular group of things
Self-study	work that you do without the help of a teacher
Unwind	to relax
Break	to stop what you are doing for a short period of time

Idioms and Expressions:

Hit the books	to study hard
----------------------	---------------

Useful Expressions

- During this time, I usually **work on** my assignments which I haven't finished the previous night.

❖ **Work on something** : to spend time producing or improving something

☆ His dancing technique is good, but he needs to *work on* his fitness.

☆ He has spent the last two years *working on* a book about childcare.

- I **get to** eat lunch at that time and have a chat with my classmates and friends.

❖ **Get to do something**: to have the opportunity to do something

☆ She *gets to* travel all over the place with her job.

☆ We *got to* meet all the stars after the show.

- My afternoon schedule is not so **tight** as I only have one or two classes.

❖ **Tight**: if time is tight, it is difficult for you to do everything you need to do in the time available

☆ Time is *tight*, and she has another meeting to go to this afternoon.

☆ We should arrive on time, but it'll be *tight*.

☆ I'm working to a very *tight* deadline.

Other usage:

❖ **Tight**: used about clothes that are uncomfortable because they are so close against your body

☆ The first shirt was a bit *tight*.

❖ **Tight**: controlled very carefully and strictly

☆ Security has been very *tight* throughout the Prince's visit.

- On Tuesday and Thursday nights, I go to a self-study room and **hit the books** until 11 PM.

❖ **Hit the books**: study hard

☆ I have an exam next week; I must *hit the books* now.

☆ I can't go out tonight. I've got to *hit the books*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) You indicated in the survey that you are a member of a student organization/club. What does your club do? How many members does it have? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) What other extracurricular activities do you have? How do you balance study with these extra activities?
- 3) Do you agree that students have to devote themselves to studying, or is it also important to do other activities?

Grammar Pointer

Adverbs of Frequency: *always, usually, regularly, normally, often, sometimes, occasionally, rarely, seldom, never*, etc. These words basically answer the questions, —how frequently? || or -how often? ||

Here are some examples from the sample answer above:

- ☆ During this time, I *usually* work on my assignments which I didn't finish the previous night.

☆ *Sometimes*, my classmates and I go to the gym to play ping pong or to the music room in the library to unwind.

Adverbs of frequency are divided into two: definite frequency adverbs and indefinite frequency adverbs.

Adverbs of Definite Frequency

These adverbs are definite because the frequency is clearly stated—we know exactly how often something happens.

Here are some definite frequency adverbs:

hourly	daily	weekly	monthly	yearly/annually
every second	every 60 seconds	once a minute	twice a year	three times a year
once	twice	once	thrice	four times

Position: These types of adverbs are *typically* in the END of the sentence. For example:

- ☆ Many giant corporations pay their taxes **annually**.
- ☆ We go to a dentist **every six months**.
- ☆ Mr. Kim will check on you **every hour**.

However, there are times that some adverbs of definite frequency may start in the BEGINNING of the sentence, especially for emphasis and style purposes. For example:

- ☆ **Everyday**, more than 425 people die from lung cancer in the U.K.

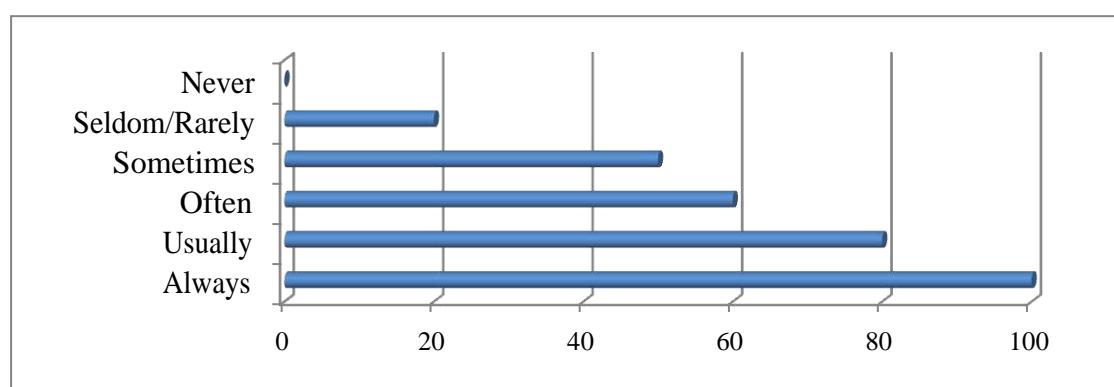
Adverbs of Indefinite Frequency

These adverbs are indefinite because the frequency of something may be stated, but the idea of that frequency is *vague* or *undefined*—we do not know exactly how often it *is*.

Here is a list of indefinite frequency adverbs:

always	generally	occasionally	seldom
constantly	infrequently	often	sometimes
ever	never	rarely	hardly ever
frequently	normally	regularly	usually

The chart below shows the relative frequencies of these adverbs. It is important to understand that the percentages only show approximate frequencies; other sources will have slightly different numbers. What is important is not the absolute number, but only the relative frequency.



Position: Adverbs of indefinite frequency mainly go in the MIDDLE of the sentence:

1. **Before** the main verb.

- ☆ We **usually** go to the beach every summer. (Main verb here is *go*)
- ☆ I **often** watch a movie on Saturdays. (Main verb here is *watch*.)

2. **After** the verb **to be** (am, are, is, was were)

- ☆ Our new employee is **always** late.
- ☆ She was **constantly** bugging me about the new tenant.

However, some adverbs, such as *frequently*, *often*, *usually*, *sometimes* and *occasionally*, may be placed at the BEGINNING or at the END of the sentence. For example:

- ☆ **Sometimes**, my classmates and I go to the gym to play ping pong or to the music room in the library to unwind.
- ☆ I don't want to be with him **sometimes**.
- ☆ I play basketball with my boss **occasionally**.
- ☆ **Occasionally**, we would go to the bar and have some fun.

Topic 8

Imagine that you want to take a TOEIC class in the summer. Call a school and ask three or four questions about it.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Stating the intention
Body	Brief explanation on the reason for considering the school
	Questions
Conclusion	Closing statement

Hello. As required by our company, I have to take a TOEIC class in the summer. I've heard from my colleagues and friends that you offer *above average instruction*, so I am considering your school to be my **venue** of learning. I would really appreciate if you could **accommodate** some of the **queries** that I have in mind. First, I want to know how long your school has been teaching TOEIC classes. It would be of great help in my decision making to know if your institution is experienced and **established** enough *in terms of* giving such lessons. Next, I would like to know what the nationalities of your teachers are. It is important for me to be taught by instructors with American or neutral accent. Finally and most importantly, I want to **inquire** as to how much fee you ask from your students and what the **mode** of payment is. Thank you so much and I am *looking forward to* your response.

Vocabulary:

Venue	the place where an activity or event happens
Instruction	the teaching of a particular subject or skill
Accommodate	to give what is needed to someone
Query	a question that you ask because you want information or because you are not certain about something
Established	having existed for a long time, and therefore recognized as good or successful
Inquire	to ask for information
Mode	how something is done or how it happens

Idioms and Expressions:

In terms of something	in relation to; with reference to
Neutral accent	one's accent is not easily identifiable as belonging to a region, or to a particular social group
Look forward to	to expect or hope for

Useful Expressions

➤ I've heard from my colleagues and friends that you offer **above average** instruction.

❖ **Above average:** greater than the usual level or amount

☆ Our supervisor has an *above average* salary.

☆ Richard is a really good athlete. His capabilities are definitely *above average*.

☆ Plato believed that humor is a sign of *above average* intelligence.

➤ I would really appreciate if you could **accommodate** some of the queries that I have in mind.

❖ **Accommodate:** to give what is needed to someone

☆ The new policies fail to *accommodate* the disabled.

☆ We will try to *accommodate* you with an earlier flight.

Other usage:

❖ **Accommodate:** to provide a place or room for someone to stay in

☆ The hotel can *accommodate* 600 guests.

➤ It would be of great help in my decision making to know if your institution is experienced and established enough **in terms of** giving such lessons.

❖ **In terms of something:** in relation to; with reference to

☆ Cheryl was speaking *in terms of* improving students' grades by teaching them how to study.

☆ This film offers nothing *in terms of* satisfactory entertainment.

Points of Discussion

- 1) You mentioned that you go to an English institute. Do you think you learn more English inside or outside the classroom? What do you do on your own to improve your English?
- 2) Some people get very embarrassed when they have to speak in a foreign language. Does this happen to you? What suggestions would you give to somebody who suffered from this problem?
- 3) Do you think that children should begin learning a foreign language as soon as they start school? Cite your reasons and examples to support your answer.

Grammar Pointer

Embedded question is a question that appears in a declarative statement or in another question.

Here are examples of embedded questions from the sample answer:

- ☆ First, I want to know *how long your school has been teaching TOEIC classes.*
- ☆ I would like to know *what the nationalities of your teachers are.*
- ☆ I want to inquire as to *how much fee you ask from your students and what the mode of payment.*

Use of the Embedded Questions

Embedded questions can seem a bit more polite than direct questions. If you approach a stranger to ask about a train schedule, for example, the embedded question is less abrupt than the direct question.

Direct Question and Response	Embedded Question and Response
A: What time is it? B: Sorry, I don't know the time.	A: Do you know what time it is? (embedded question in a question) B: Sorry. I don't know what time it is. (embedded question in a statement)

STRUCTURE

In interrogative questions such as:

☆ How long *has your school been holding* TOEIC classes?

we can see that the verb comes first before the subject. However, it is different in the case of embedded questions. Let's examine this further.

Embedded questions in statements and questions follow the same pattern. This is true for both wh-questions and yes/no embedded questions. Let's look at the following:

WH- Embedded Questions				
Main Question/Statement	Interrogative	Subject	Verb	Object/Complement
Do you know	how long	your school	has been teaching	TOEIC classes?
I don't know	how long	my school	has been teaching	TOEIC classes.

Other examples:

- ☆ Do you know *what the housing market will be like* next year?
- ☆ Do you remember *when President Clinton got impeached*?
- ☆ I'm not sure *where they're from*.

Yes/No Embedded Questions				
Main Question/Statement	Interrogative	Subject	Verb	Object/Complement
Do you know	if whether	your school	has been teaching	TOEIC classes?
I don't know		my school	has been teaching	TOEIC classes.

Other examples:

- ☆ Do you know *if the class has started*?
- ☆ Could you tell me *if he will come*?
- ☆ I don't know *whether he will come or not*.
- ☆ I wonder *whether to quit my job*.

Notice the sentence structure following the interrogative (question word). Because embedded questions are noun clauses, they follow the structure of a statement and not a question. In other words, always use: **subject + verb + object/complement**.

INCORRECT: Do you know what time is it?

INCORRECT: I don't know what time is it.

The following phrases are commonly used to introduce embedded questions:

<i>Could you tell me ...</i>	<i>I wanted to know ...</i>
<i>I wonder ...</i>	<i>Do you know ...</i>
<i>Who knows ...</i>	<i>The question is ...</i>

Chapter

4

Daily Life

- Topic 1. Living Arrangement
 - Topic 2. Spending time after work or school
 - Topic 3. Weekends
 - Topic 4. Shopping Mall
 - Topic 5. Parks
 - Topic 6. Family Ceremony
 - Topic 7. When your parents loved you the most?
 - Topic 8. Stress
 - Topic 9. Role Play: Inquiring about sale

Topic 1

Do you live with your family, alone or with a roommate? Tell me the merits and demerits of your living arrangement.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Living arrangement and type of residence
Body	Disadvantages
	Advantages
Conclusion	Realization regarding the type of living arrangement

I've been living alone in a **cozy officetel** for two years now. I chose it because it's near our office, and it's cheap. In the beginning, I found it difficult to live *on my own*. After a tiring day or week at work, I **oblige** myself to do all the household chores. Washing the dishes or doing the laundry is not my *cup of tea*. On the other hand, having this kind of living arrangement brings *a bunch of* advantages *as well*. For example, I have my own **discretion** on whatever I want to do. I have the authority to decide on everything that involves my household. Moreover, I can **savor** my right to privacy. Overall, I believe that this freedom **entails** a greater responsibility; therefore, I have to be wiser and more mature when it comes to decision making.

Vocabulary:

Cozy	warm and comfortable, and making you feel relaxed
Officetel	a Korean multi-purpose building with residential and commercial units
Oblige	to force someone to do something because it is the law, a rule, or a duty
Discretion	freedom to act or judge on one's own
Savor	get enjoyment from; take pleasure in
Entail	to make something necessary, or to involve something

Idioms and Expressions:

On (one's) own	Alone
Not someone's cup of tea	if someone or something is not your cup of tea, you do not like them or do not consider them interesting

Useful Expressions

- I found it difficult to live on my own.
❖ Find something difficult/frightening/relaxing etc:
to experience something in a particular way

- ☆ William now *finds walking very difficult*.
☆ She doesn't *find it easy* to talk about her problems.
☆ Kate *found the work very dull*.

- Washing the dishes or doing the laundry is **not my cup of tea**.
❖ **not my cup of tea**: if someone or something is not your cup of tea, you do not like them or do not consider them interesting

- ☆ Golf is *not my dad's cup of tea*.
☆ Sky diving *isn't John's cup of tea*. He's afraid of heights.

- On the other hand, having this kind of living arrangement brings **a bunch of advantages as well**.
❖ **A bunch of something**: a large number of amount

- ☆ I have *a bunch of stuff* I have to do before lunch.
☆ There's *a whole bunch of places* I want to visit.
❖ **As well**: in addition

☆ Now that we've opened our stockings, let's open our other presents *as well*.
☆ Invite Edward---and Simon *as well*.

- Overall, I believe that this freedom **entails** a greater responsibility.
❖ **Entail**: to make something necessary, or to involve something

- ☆ Repairing the roof will *entail* spending a lot of money.
☆ Some foreign travel is *entailed* in the job.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Are there any rules in your house that you have to follow? What are they? Do you follow them? What happens when someone disobeys them?
- 2) In the United States and other countries in the West, most children prefer to move out of their parents' home upon entering college (around 18 or 19). What do you think about this? Cite your opinion with as much detail as possible.
- 3) Assume that you are moving out of your parents' home, and you are looking for a new apartment. Call the real estate manager of the apartment that you've become interested in. Ask three or four questions about it.

Grammar Pointer

I **have been living** alone in a cozy officetel for two years.

The sentence above shows an action that *started in the past and continues in the present*. We have learned that the **present perfect simple** is used to express an action that began in the past and is still going on or has just finished. Why do we use the present perfect continuous in this sentence then?

The **PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS** is also used for the purpose stated above. However, there are also major differences that exist between these two tenses. While the **present perfect simple** is mainly used to express that an action is completed or to emphasize the result, the **present perfect continuous** is used to emphasize the duration or continuous course of an action. In the sentence above, we are concerned about how long the action has been going on. Thus, we use the present perfect continuous.

Let's discuss the differences of the present perfect and present perfect continuous in detail.

Present Perfect Simple	Present Perfect Continuous
Form: have + past participle I / you / we / they <i>have spoken</i> . He / she / it <i>has spoken</i> .	Form: have + been +verb + ing I / you / we / they <i>have been speaking</i> . He / she / it <i>has been speaking</i> .
Result (what / how much / how often) ☆ I <i>have eaten</i> three muffins.	Duration (how long) ☆ I <i>have been surfing</i> the internet for an hour.
Emphasis on completion ☆ I <i>have done</i> my homework. <i>Meaning:</i> My homework is completed now.	Emphasis on duration ☆ I <i>have been doing</i> my homework. <i>Meaning:</i> That's how I have spent my time. It does not matter whether the homework is completed now.
Permanent ☆ Michael <i>has lived</i> in this city for 5 years. <i>(Meaning: He is a permanent resident of this city.)</i>	Temporary ☆ Michael <i>has been living</i> here for 6 months. <i>Meaning: This situation is only temporary. Maybe he is an exchange student and only here for a year.</i>
Signal Words ☆ how often ☆ ... times ☆ ever ☆ never	Signal Words ☆ how long ☆ since ☆ for

Topic 2

How do you spend your time after work or school? Can you describe what you do with your family or friends during weekdays?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement about typical day after work/school
Body	Details of schedule after work/school
	Activities done with family and friends and reasons for doing so
Conclusion	Opinion about spending time with family and friends
	Resolution to make time with family/friends better

After school, I usually spend my time with my family at home. I arrive at around 8 or 9 PM. Occasionally, I come home *a bit* late because I drink with my friends or *hang out* with my co-club members. After taking a rest in the couch for a while, I'll *hit the shower*. Classes and **extracurricular** activities at school make me feel *dog-tired*, so I want to relax first before I study. As the other members of my family also have the same busy lifestyle, we don't get to talk much on weekdays. My mother and father manage a small convenience store, and when they arrive at home, they just want to *hit the sack*. My younger sister is a high school student and usually comes home at midnight because she has to attend classes in her academy. Thus, our weekdays are spent without having *quality time* together. However, on weekends, we *make a point of* bonding together and talking about how our week *went by*.

Vocabulary:

Extracurricular	(of activities or subjects) not part of the usual school or college course
------------------------	--

Idioms and Expressions:

A bit	to a small degree; slightly or a little
Hang out	to spend time in a particular place or with particular people
Hit the shower	to take a shower
Dog-tired	extremely tired
Hit the sack	to go to bed in order to sleep
Go by	to move past or beyond

Useful Expressions

- Sometimes, I come home **a bit** late because I drink with my friends or hang out with my co-club members.
- ❖ **A bit** : to a small degree; slightly or a little

- ☆ The song sounds *a bit* depressing.
- ☆ It's *a bit* warm in this area.
- ☆ I got *a bit* mad because he's late on our appointment.

- Those classes and activities at school make me **dog-tired**.
- ❖ **Dog-tired**: extremely tired

- ☆ He went to bed *dog-tired*.
- ☆ Janis was *dog-tired* after the series. She played every game.
- ☆ I was not totally happy when I reached the summit after a three-hour climb because I was *dog-tired*.

- Thus, our weekdays are spent without having **quality time** together.
- ❖ **Quality time**: time that you spend giving your full attention to someone or something without having to deal with other things at the same time

- ☆ Our boss said he needs to give his staff some *quality time*.
- ☆ Jenny has been very busy these days, so she makes sure to spend *quality time* with his kids on weekends.
- ☆ In order to get high grades, David should devote more *quality time* to his studies.

- However, on weekends, we **make a point of** bonding together and talking about how our week **went by**.
- ❖ **Make a point of (doing something)**: to always do something or take particular care to do it

- ☆ I *make a point of* calling my grandmother every week.
- ☆ Dan broke up with her girlfriend two months ago. From then on, he *made a point of* avoiding her.
- ❖ **Go by**: pass
- ☆ We sat on the shore and watched the sailboats *go by*.
- ☆ Several weeks *went by*, and still we haven't heard anything from him.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Where do young people in this country usually spend their free time? What do they usually do?
- 2) There might be some new activities that you'd like to try doing in your free time. What is it? Why do you like to try it? Tell me about it in detail.
- 3) Are there any activities that you used to do but don't do anymore? Why did you stop?

Grammar Pointer

I come home a bit late *because* I drink with my friends or hang out with my co-club members.

In the sentence above, *because* is used to explain the reason why the speaker occasionally comes home a bit late. The reason given is that *he has to drink with his friends or hang out with his co-club members*.

Aside from *because*, the conjunctions *since*, *as* and *for* are also used to explain a reason for something in a sentence. These words almost have similar meanings. However, they differ in some aspects.

BECAUSE

Because often introduces new information which is not known to the listener/reader. **It puts more emphasis on the reason.** When the reason is the most important part of the sentence, the *because-clause* usually comes at the end.

My younger sister is a high school student and usually comes home at midnight **because she has to attend classes in her academy.**

Other examples:

- ☆ We had dinner after ten o' clock **because Dad arrived late.**
- ☆ I can't leave the house **because I can't find my keys.**
- ☆ We had to cancel the picnic **because of the rain.**

When the because-clause is in the beginning of the sentence, it means that we are putting more emphasis on the effect.

☆ **Because** Dad arrived late, we had dinner after ten o'clock.

Notice that we put a comma after the because-clause.

AS/ SINCE

Both conjunctions are used when the reason is already known to the listener, or when it is not the most important part of the sentence. As/Since-clauses often come at the beginning of sentences. They are relatively formal.

As the other members of my family also have the same busy lifestyle, we don't get to talk much on weekdays.

Other examples:

☆ **Since** I already had a degree in English, I decided that it would be a good idea to use my qualification for something more useful.

☆ **As** the performance had already started, we went up to the balcony and occupied some empty seats there.

FOR

For suggests that the reason is given as an afterthought. It is never placed at the beginning of the sentence and is more characteristic of written, rather than spoken English:

Examples:

☆ I decided to stop the work I was doing - **for** it was very late and I wanted to go to bed.

☆ We went to a small restaurant - **for** we were hungry.

Summary

Word	Explanation	Example
because	The reason is very important in the sentence, so <i>because</i> comes in the second clause of the sentence.	I am reading this book because it is interesting.
as	The reason is already known.	As we read, we learn.
since	The reason is already known. (more formal than as)	Since he got up late, he missed the bus.
for	The reason is given at the end of the sentence.	We went to a small restaurant - for we were hungry.

Topic 3

How do you spend your time during weekends? Can you tell me about what you do on the weekend?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General description of speaker's weekends
Body	Activities done
	Companions
	Reasons for liking the activities
Conclusion	Viewpoint about the weekend activities

Weekends never fail to excite me. Personally, I love this time of the week because it's always fun and **exhilarating**. Since I love outdoor activities, I always include our early morning run in Namsan Park in my weekend plan. I adore the *panoramic view* from the park and the fresh air that serves as a *welcome break* from the pollution of the city. Aside from jogging, we also get pleasure from mountain hiking. We usually climb twice a month, and we do it during weekends. Given a chance, we would like to climb Halla Mountain in Jeju Island. I believe that it's definitely fun to be involved in outdoor activities. This is because one can push himself to **extremes** and learn the **harsh** reality of his physical and mental limitations. In the end, however, there's always a rewarding feeling that await in the finish line or summit. It is, for me, an **incomparable** accomplishment.

Vocabulary:

Exhilarating	making you feel extremely happy, excited, and full of energy
Extreme	the largest possible amount or degree of something
Harsh	unpleasant, unkind, cruel or unnecessarily severe
Summit	the highest point of a mountain
Incomparable	so good or great that nothing or no one else could achieve the same standard

Idioms and Expressions:

Panoramic view	a view of a wide area
Welcome break	a much appreciated change

Useful Expressions

- **Personally**, I love this time of the week because it's always fun and exhilarating.
❖ **Personally**: used for emphasizing that you are giving your own opinion

☆ *Personally*, I think we should stick with our original plan.

☆ *Personally*, I think it's a waste of time.

- I adore the **panoramic view** from the park and the fresh air that serves as a welcome break from the noxious pollution of the city.
❖ **Panoramic view**: a view of a wide area

☆ We have a wonderful *panoramic view* of the countryside.

☆ I had a *panoramic view* of the city.

- ❖ **Welcome break** : a much appreciated change

☆ The weekend was a *welcome break* from the pressures of work.

☆ The group activities were a *welcome break* from the lectures.

☆ Watching TV provides him a *welcome break* from his serious study.

- It is, for me, an **incomparable** accomplishment.
❖ **Incomparable**: so good or great that nothing or no one else could achieve the same standard

☆ I witnessed a performance of *incomparable* brilliance.

☆ The wine he bought is of *incomparable* flavor.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Can you tell me what you did last weekend? Where did you go and who were you with? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 2) What kinds of weekend activities are recently popular in your country? Give as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

Some languages of the world categorize nouns into classes. One of these classifications is based on the degree to which they are “alive” or animate. ANIMACY can have various effects on the language’s grammar: proper word order, verb tenses, etc.

In relation to this, Koreans are not accustomed to make a sentence in an active form with inanimate (not alive) objects as its subject. Maybe that is due to the widespread implicit belief that has been deeply immersed within Korean culture that only human beings can do something using his will or intent. Therefore, it sounds a little uncommon or improper for Koreans to make an expression that something that seems to have no will attempts to exert active effects on something or someone.

In the sample answer, we see the sentence:

Weekends never fail to excite me.

Notice that the subject used in this sentence is inanimate. The use of „weekend“ here is considered perfectly normal in English but inappropriate in proper Korean sentences.

Take a look at the following sentences:

English sentence	Korean form
The <i>road</i> will take you to the station.	You will arrive at the station along the road.
<i>Horror</i> made her dumb.	She became dumb by horror.
Her <i>refusal</i> made him angry.	She made him angry by refusal.

The subject tells **who** or **what** the sentence is about. In English sentences, it can be a person, place, thing or idea.

Person:	Pamela sang a song at her sister's wedding.
Place:	California continues to lead the nation in population growth.
Thing:	Griffin's soccer ball rolled into the street.

Similarly, those that you cannot see or touch can also be subjects of sentences. These include states, events, concepts, feelings, qualities, etc.

Examples:

Happiness means different things to different people.

Her **sorrow** is heart-breaking.

Childhood is not always a happy time.

The **weight** of the backpack made the child fall over.

Topic 4

Could you describe to me a shopping mall which you visit frequently? Where is it located and when do you go there?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Primary statement about the frequently visited shopping mall
Body	Location
	Usual schedule of visit
	Positive features of the shopping mall
Conclusion	Thought about the place

I live in Suwon City and I usually go to the AK Plaza. It is located in Paldal-gu and is about 15 minutes away by car or 30 minutes away by public transportation from my house. It is a very modern mall that shares its building with Suwon Station making it very **accessible** for those people travelling to and from Suwon. You can make a quick stop at the mall before you take the subway or when you get out of the train. It is a six-storey building that includes a cineplex, **specialty** retail stores and restaurants. My parents and I go there every weekend. We can find almost everything in AK Plaza. When we get hungry after shopping, there is a *wide range* of restaurants to choose from. It is a great place to go to with your friends, family or *just about* anyone.

Vocabulary:

Accessible	easily reached or obtained
Specialty	special line of goods or products in a store

Idioms and Expressions:

Wide range	many kinds; choices
Just about	almost

Useful Expressions

- It is a very modern mall that shares its building with Suwon Station, making it very **accessible** for those people travelling to and from Suwon.
- ❖ **Accessible:** easily reached or obtained

- ☆ The Internet is now *accessible* to the rural communities.
- ☆ The newly-constructed bridge has made commuting across the Han River more *accessible*.
- ☆ The specially-designed kitchen makes movement more *accessible* for the handicapped woman.

- It is a six-storey building that includes a Cineplex, **specialty** retail stores and restaurants.
- ❖ **Specialty:** special line of goods or products

- ☆ She always shops at *specialty* stores in the mall.
- ☆ Louis Vuitton, Prada and Bulgari are just some of the *specialty* stores that you will find in the area.
- ☆ The prices at the *specialty* stores are more expensive because they sell branded items.

- When we get hungry after shopping, there is a wide range of restaurants to choose from.
- ❖ **Wide range:** many choices

- ☆ There is a *wide range* of products to choose from.
- ☆ The Landmark Department Store sells a *wide range* of goods for infants to adults.

- It is a great place to go to with your friends, family or *just about* anyone.
- ❖ **Just about:** almost

- ☆ I think we've *just about* finished.
- ☆ This job is *just about* done.

Points of Discussion

- 1) When did you go shopping recently and who were with you? Tell me about it in detail.
- 2) What is the most famous department store/shopping area in your city/town? Where is it located? What is it famous for? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

The is the most common word in English; **a** is the fifth most common. This means that these are the words that you are most likely to make mistakes with: simply because they are the words you use most.

These are some of the rules which can guide you when using articles.

DEFINITE ARTICLE—THE

With the	Without the
public buildings, institutions, means of transport (definite)	public buildings, institutions, means of transport (indefinite)
You can make a quick stop at <i>the mall</i> before you take <i>the subway</i> or when you get out of <i>the train</i> .	I go to the office <i>by subway</i> . We went all the way to Busan <i>by train</i> .
names of buildings	names of buildings except if the first word is the name of a place.
I usually go to <i>the AK Plaza</i> .	It is a very modern mall that shares its building <i>with Suwon Station</i> .
names of countries in the plural; mountain ranges; regions	names of countries in the singular; summits of mountains; continents; towns and cities
<i>The United States of America</i> <i>The Alps</i> <i>The Middle East</i>	Korea, ChinaAsia, Europe Suwon City, Paldal-gu
group of islands	single islands
<i>The Philippines</i>	Jeju Island
name with of-phrase; oceans; seas; rivers	parks; lakes; streets
<i>The Statue of Liberty</i>	Namsan Park; Andong Lake; Euljiro

Other uses of THE:

- To refer to something which has already been mentioned
- ☆ We have two cars: A Hyundai and a Samsung Renault. *The* Hyundai is black, and *the* SamsungRenault is red.

- Musical instruments
- ☆ He plays *the* guitar.

- To refer to objects we regard as unique
- ☆ *the* sun, *the* moon, *the* world

- Before superlatives and ordinal numbers
- ☆ *the tallest building, the second book*

Pronunciation:

The is usually pronounced as /ðə/, but is often pronounced as /ði/ before words beginning with vowel sounds or to add emphasis.

[ðə]	[ði]
the boy, the book, the computer	the American boy, the old book

INDEFINITE ARTICLES—A AND AN

- We use *a /an* to say what kind of person or thing someone or something is (often with an adjective, or to say it belongs to a particular group).
- ☆ There is *a* wide range of restaurants to choose from.
- ☆ It is *a* great place to go to with your friends.
- We use *a /an* to talk about someone's job.
- ☆ My husband is *a* teacher.
- ☆ She wants to work as *an* accountant.
- We use *a /an* when we are talking about something for the first time.
- ☆ He is wearing *a* suit and *a* tie.
- ☆ They have *a* cat.

She took a glass of wine and started to drink.	She took the glass of wine nearest to her.
<i>One of the many glasses of water</i>	<i>A specific glass</i>
I need to see a doctor.	I have to see the doctor tomorrow.
<i>not any specific doctor</i>	<i>It's clear I am talking about my usual doctor.</i>

NO ARTICLE

No article is needed before abstract nouns used in a general sense.	You'll need patience and understanding if you're going to be a teacher.
No article is needed before the names of meals, unless it is a formal occasion.	I had breakfast with my sister. <i>I attended a dinner at the Rotary Club.</i>
No article is needed before television as a medium, only as an appliance.	Carol saw her brother on television. <i>She had an indoor antenna on the television.</i>

Topic 5

Do you like to go to parks? When do you go to parks and what do you do there? Pick one of the parks that you often visit and tell me where it is located and what it looks like.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Preference
Body	Desired day and time of visit
	Name, location and description of frequently visited park
	People you hang out with
	Activities done
Conclusion	Feelings towards going to the park

I see to it that I spend time with my family every weekend. *More often than not*, we go on a picnic at a riverside park near our apartment. It usually takes us 20 minutes to get there on foot, but we sometimes ride a bicycle to save time. We always *make sure* to bring packed snack or lunch when we go on our family *get-together*. We usually prepare kimbap, some fruit and sandwiches. Aside from the food that we share together, we also enjoy having good conversations and exercising using the park's fitness equipment. Just like us, other families and groups of friends also go on a **brisk** walk or jog along the area. It is really fun to bond and *work out* with my family. I'll definitely **cherish** every moment that I spend with them.

Vocabulary:

Brisk	quick, energetic and active
Cherish	to keep something pleasant in your mind for a long time

Idioms and Expressions:

See to it	to deal with or take responsibility for someone or something
More often than not	usually
Make sure	to check something so that you can be sure about it
Get-together	a small informal meeting or social gathering
Work out	to do physical exercise as a way of keeping fit

Useful Expressions

- **More often than not**, we go on a picnic in a riverside park near our apartment.
❖ **More often than not**: usually

☆ These flowers will live through the winter *more often than not*.
☆ *More often than not*, the arguments could have been avoided.
☆ Food is scarce and *more often than not* they go hungry.

- We always **make sure** to bring packed snack or lunch when we go on our family **get-together**.
❖ **Make sure**: to check something so that you can be sure about it

☆ I think I locked it, but we'd better *make sure*.
☆ I just wanted to *make sure* you knew where to go.
☆ Always *make sure* of your facts before accusing anyone.
❖ **Get-together**: a small informal meeting or social gathering
☆ I arranged a *get-together* at my home.
☆ We have a family *get-together* at my parents' house.

- It is really fun to bond and **work out** with my family.
❖ **Work out**: to do physical exercise as a way of keeping fit

☆ He *works out* at the local gym every day.
☆ They regularly walked, danced, ran and *worked out*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) There might be things that annoy you about other people's behavior in parks? What do you dislike most? Tell me about it in detail.
- 2) What are some famous amusement parks near where you live? Have you been to them? What rides is this amusement park famous for? Give as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

We already know that a COUNT NOUN is something that is separate and distinct individual units. They usually refer to what can be perceived by the senses. NON-COUNT NOUNS, on the other hand, refer to things that can't be counted because they are thought of as wholes that can't be cut into parts. They often refer to abstractions and occasionally have a collective meaning.

Count Nouns: dog, apple, computer, window

Non-count Nouns: water, bread, money, music

Certain nouns in English belong to both classes: they have both a non-count and a count meaning. Normally the non-count meaning is abstract and general and the count meaning concrete and specific.

For example, the noun “fruit” can be either countable or uncountable, depending on context. It is usually uncountable when we speak of “fruit” in a non-specific way such as in these sentences:

- ☆ We usually prepare kimbap, some **fruit** and sandwiches.
- ☆ We must eat five servings of **fruit** and vegetables every day.

Note that we use the quantifiers some and five servings before fruit, but since fruit is uncountable in this context, we do not add –s.

When emphasizing the different kinds of fruits, we usually use the countable noun.

- ☆ I love Malaysian **fruits**, especially, guavas, mangosteens and papayas.

Here are other examples nouns which can either be count or non-count:

Count	Noun-Count
Use the singular form for a more particular, specific meaning. In some cases an adjective is included/	Use the non-count form when speaking "in general".
A or A + ADJECTIVE	ABSTRACT NOUNS (general statement of fact)
I had a good experience today.	I have a lot of experience in business management.
I have a duty to serve my country.	He has a strong sense of duties .
We had an excellent time today.	Time passes slowly.

I had a wonderful sleep last night.	Sleep improves a person's health.
MATERIAL NOUNS	MATERIAL NOUNS
I saw a chicken crossing the road.	I'll buy some chicken for lunch.
He brought four double-fudge chocolate cakes to the party.	He likes to eat Cakes .
The detective found several blond hairs on the body of the victim.	She has gorgeous hair .
They sell a lot of coffees .	I drink coffee thrice a day.

QUANTIFIERS

	Countable Nouns	Non-countable Nouns
Some	There are some people.	There is some food.
Any	There aren't any people.	There isn't any food.
A lot of	There are a lot of people.	There is a lot of food.
A few	There are a few people.	-
A little	-	There is a little food.
Many	There aren't many people.	-
Much	-	There isn't much food.

Plurals: Although uncountable nouns do not usually take a plural form, they can when used in a *countable sense*.

- most countable nouns can be made plural adding **s**, or **ies** (books, bags)
- uncountable nouns can't be made plural at all (**NEVER** informations, knowledges, furnitures, chaoses)
- nouns *used in a countable sense* can be made plural (*I saw some chickens running away from a fox.*)
- nouns *used in an uncountable sense* can't have a plural form. (*I'd like 200 grams of chicken please.*)

Topic 6

Have you ever participated in any family ceremony recently? Tell me a little bit about it.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Family ceremony
Body	Significance of the ceremony
	Details of the ceremony
	Highlight of the ceremony
Conclusion	Thought about the event

Last Saturday was my niece's first birthday. In Korea, the first birthday of a child is a **significant** event, and for such a **meaningful** occasion, our relatives and friends *showed up*. It was held in a restaurant which has been *decked out* in pretty decorations. My niece was dressed in a colorful hanbok and a traditional hat. The **highlight** of the event occurred when it was time for the doljabi **ritual**. Items, such as strings, pencil, money, rice, etc., were laid out on the table. It is believed that the item that the child will pick up represents the path he or she is going to take. My niece was made to sit in front of these objects and after a short while, she picked up the money. Everyone clapped and was happy that she will be rich. After that, we had a **superb** lunch. Our relatives and friends also *handed in* gifts—gold rings, charm bracelets and money. We had a very great time at the party.

Vocabulary:

Significant	important
Meaningful	important
Highlight	the best or most exciting, entertaining or interesting part of something
Ritual	a formal ceremony
Superb	of excellent quality; very great

Idioms and Expressions:

Deck out	to decorate a person or object with something, usually for a special occasion
Hand in	to give something to a person in authority

Useful Expressions

- Our relatives and friends **showed up**.
❖ **Show up:** to arrive somewhere in order to join a group of people, especially late or unexpectedly

☆ I invited him for eight o'clock, but he didn't *show up* until nine-thirty.
☆ We were expecting thirty people to come, but half of them never *showed up*.

Other Usage:

- ❖ **Show up:** to make it possible to see or notice something that was not clear before

☆ The sunlight *showed up* the marks on the window.

- It was held in a restaurant which has been **decked out** in pretty decorations.
❖ **Deck out:** to decorate a person or object with something, usually for a special occasion

☆ The streets are *decked out* with flags and streamers.
☆ She had *decked* him *out* in expensive clothes.

- The **highlight** of the event occurred when it was time for the doljabi ritual.
❖ **Highlight:** the best or most exciting, entertaining or interesting part of something

☆ Other festival *highlights* include a new children's opera by Christopher Brown.
☆ The *highlight* of the trip was visiting the Great Wall of China.
☆ I like to watch the *highlights* of the day's events.

- Our relatives and friends also **handed in** gifts.
❖ **Hand in:** to give something to a person in authority

☆ I forgot to *hand in* my test paper.
☆ Please *hand in* your keys when you leave the hotel.
☆ Have you *handed in* your history essay yet?

Points of Discussion

- 1) Can you tell me about the wedding traditions in your country? Does your family follow them?
- 2) Does your family hold any special ceremony for the deceased members? What is the ceremony called? What are the preparations done? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.
- 3) I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. You were invited to attend your cousin's wedding. Call him and ask three or four questions about the specifics of the event.

Grammar Pointer

In most cases the subject comes first and is followed by the verb such as in this sentence:

My niece	was dressed	in a colorful hanbok and a traditional hat.
subject	verb	others

Sometimes, however, the subject and verb are reversed.

Last Saturday	was	my niece's first birthday.
time expression	verb	subject

We use inversion in the following cases:

➤ QUESTIONS

The most common use of inversion is forming questions (interrogative sentences).

They are in the park.	Are they in the park?
She is going to France tomorrow.	Is she going to France tomorrow?

If there is no auxiliary verb in the sentence, one needs to be added when you invert the word order.

Andrew played soccer yesterday.	Did Andrew play soccer yesterday?
It belongs to Jessica.	Does it belong to Jessica?

➤ EMPHASIS

When the sentence is inverted to emphasize a subject, the subject follows the verb.

- ☆ Last Saturday was my niece's first birthday.
- ☆ Over the treetops rose the red kite.

When a sentence is inverted to emphasize a complement, the complement appears near the beginning of the sentence, before the subject and the verb.

- ☆ What inspiration you gave us!
- ☆ What a day we had!

Here are the other rules and examples. You should realize that they exist, but try not to use them unless either they are essential in the context, or else you have fully mastered normal word order patterns.

Sentences that begin with time-constraining words or phrases, such as "rarely," "hardly ever" and "never," normally are inverted. A sentence that is constructed this way puts emphasis on the rarity or impossibility of the action.

Never have I been more insulted!

Seldom has he seen anything stranger.

➤ CONDITIONAL STATEMENTS

In some situations, the conditional *if* is omitted and an inversion is used in its place. (Only with verbs, *were*, *should* or *had*.) Note the following examples:

If clause	Inverted Sentence
<i>If I were a doctor</i> , I would be rich.	<i>Were I a doctor</i> , I would be rich.
<i>If I had taken the subway</i> , I would have arrived on time.	<i>Had I taken the subway</i> , I would have arrived on time.
<i>If you should have any questions</i> , please feel free to contact me.	<i>Should you have any questions</i> , please feel free to contact me.

Topic 7

Do you remember when you felt that your parents loved you the most? When was it and how did you appreciate it? Describe your experience with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement about parental love
Body	Memorable moment with parents
	Details of the memorable moment
	Personal feelings about the experience
Conclusion	Impact to the speaker

In Korea, education is considered as the *key* to success in life. The school where one graduates from can determine whether one will be a success or a failure. I **vividly** remember my father's first reaction when I didn't pass my university entrance exam. I thought it was the *end of the world for me*, but surprisingly my father **patted** me on the back and told me he appreciated the effort I've **exerted**, and that I'd soon *weather this storm*. My mom hugged me and gave me **encouraging** words which were enough to *lift my spirits* again. It was then that I realized how much my parents love and support me. For that same reason, I am absolutely proud to say that after a year of continual practice and hard work, I am finally in one of the most **prestigious** universities in Seoul now.

Vocabulary:

Vividly	clearly
Pat	to touch someone or something gently and usually repeatedly with the hand flat
Prestigious	very much respected and admired, usually because of being important
Exert	use
Encouraging	giving you confidence or hope

Idioms and Expressions:

End of the world	an unpleasant or disastrous destiny
Weather the storm	to be all right despite experiencing serious problems or great difficulties
Lift someone's spirit	to make someone feel happier

Useful Expressions

- In Korea, education is considered as the **key** to success in life.
❖ **Key:** the thing that will do most to help you to achieve something

- ☆ Proper planning is the *key* to success.
☆ The *key* to our strength lies in our members.

- I'd soon **weather this storm**.
❖ **Weather the storm:** to be all right despite experiencing serious problems or great difficulties

- ☆ Bob lost his job, but somehow his family *weathered the storm*.
☆ Everyone waited to see if the president could *weather the storm* caused by his son's arrest for using illegal drugs.

- They both hugged and gave me encouraging words that's enough to **lift my spirits** again.
❖ **Lift someone's spirit:** to make someone feel happier

- ☆ Your telephone call really *lifted my spirits*.
☆ Being in the sunshine all day really *lifted my spirits*.
☆ Music will *lift our spirits*. Let's listen to some Mozart.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What do you think are the characteristics that make a good parent? Do your parents have these characteristics?
- 2) What was the most important thing your parents taught you?
- 3) There might have been a time when you and your parents had a misunderstanding. Tell me about that time. What caused the conflict? How did you solve it? Tell me about it in detail.

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ They are *encouraging* student participation in our classes.
- ☆ My mom hugged me and gave me *encouraging* words which were enough to lift my spirits again.

The two sentences above use the word *encouraging*. In which sentence does *encouraging* denote action? In which sentence is it used to describe?

In this lesson, we'll study the last of the verbals—the participle. Like the other two kinds of verbals, a **PARTICIPLE** is based on a verb and expresses action or a state of being. While the gerund functions as a noun, the participle acts as an adjective. They modify nouns and pronouns. If we go back to the sentences above, *encouraging* in the second sentence modifies *words*. Thus, it is a participle. There are two types of participles:

➤ **present participles which end in -ing**

Examples:

- ☆ The *crying* baby wants milk.
- ☆ The *burning* log fell off the fire.

➤ **past participles which end in -ed, -en, -d, -t, -n, or -ne**

Examples:

- ☆ I ate *cooked* ham for breakfast.
- ☆ He had a *broken* arm.
- ☆ They are *confused* students.

POSITION OF PARTICIPLES

Participles describe nouns and pronouns and may appear in several different spots in the sentence:

➤ before the noun or pronoun it describes

The *fascinating* book was a *thrilling* read.

➤ after a linking verb, in which case they describe the subject

Ella is *exhausted*.

Sally was *bored* by the conversation.

- after the noun or pronoun that they describe. In this position, participles often include descriptive words or objects.

Someone, *having angered the herd of cattle*, is running for the fence at the speed of light.

(Having angered the herd of cattle describes someone.)

- in the beginning of the sentence, in which case they must describe the subject of the sentence:


Having lived there for such a long time, he didn't want to move to another town.
(Having lived there for such a long time describes he.)

-Ed AND -ING PARTICIPLES

Participles ending in –ed and –ing are also sometimes a source of confusion.

☆ My job is bored.

☆ My job is boring.

Which one is correct?

The first sentence means that my job is feeling unhappy because perhaps, **it** has nothing to do. This situation is impossible! Instead, you can say, —I'm bored of my job!
The second sentence, on the other hand, means that my job is not interesting.

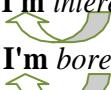
Remember that we use the:

- **Present Participle (-ing)** is used to describe something or someone.

☆ I watched an *interesting TV show* about Chinese history last night.


☆ This **film** is *boring*. Let's stop watching it.


- **Past Participle (-ed)** is used to describe how people feel about something or someone.

☆ I'm *interested* in Chinese history.


☆ I'm *bored* of my job. I want to find another one.


Topic 8

When do you feel stressed and how do you relieve your stress? What do you think the best ways of reducing stress are? Use specific details and examples in your answer.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Frequency of feeling stressed
Body	Factors that trigger stress
	Ways to overcome stress
Conclusion	Opinion/general impression regarding stress management

I feel stressed everyday whether it's about my problems concerning my family or work. I think it's normal to be stressed because it's something we live with—*day in and day out*. But I must say that I feel stressed out the most when I'm at the office, particularly when there are a lot of things to do, and I have to work overtime to *beat the deadline*. Many Korean salary men consider drinking as a **lifesaver**. After a long day, my co-workers and I leave work together to drink. It helps me *loosen up* and *takes my mind momentarily off work*. Sometimes, we go to a “norebang” when we want better entertainment. However, most of the time, I just want to go *straight* home and **collapse** into bed. I think that's the best stress **reliever**.

Vocabulary:

Lifesaver	a person or thing that gets someone out of a difficult situation
Momentarily	for a very short time
Collapse	to let your body fall onto a chair, bed, etc. because you are very tired
Reliever	something or someone that relieves

Idioms and Expressions:

Day in and day out	repeatedly; for each day
Beat the deadline	do something within the deadline
Loosen up	to relax or to become less serious
Take somebody's mind off something	to cause you to stop thinking about who or what is causing worry

Useful Expressions

- I think it's normal to be stressed because it's something we live with—**day in and day out.**

❖ **Day in and day out:** repeatedly; for each day

☆ She has to fill in forms *day in and day out*.

☆ Bryan thinks he lives a boring life because he does the same thing *day in, day out*.

☆ He used to carry out complicated tasks *day in and day out*.

- That's why I consider drinking as a **lifesaver**.

❖ **Lifesaver :** a person or thing that gets someone out of a difficult situation

☆ A plasma TV could be a *lifesaver* this holiday season.

☆ I'm glad you're here to help. You're such a *lifesaver*.

☆ That's the new 24/7 convenience store - a real *lifesaver* for our daily needs.

- I had to work overtime to **beat the deadline**.

❖ **Beat the deadline:** to do something before a planned time or before something happens

☆ I need to think of ways on how to *beat the deadline* without stressing myself.

☆ We managed to *beat the deadline* and get everything finished in time.

- It helps me **loosen up** and **takes my mind momentarily off work**.

❖ **Loosen up:** to relax or to become less serious

☆ He seemed quite nervous at the beginning of the meeting, but he soon *loosened up*.

☆ We tried to get Mary to *loosen up*, but she did not respond.

❖ **Take somebody's mind off something:** to cause you to stop thinking about who or what is causing worry

☆ Going back to work helped *take my mind off* my Ian's death.

☆ Want a game? It might *take your mind off* things.

- I just want to go **straight** home and collapse into bed.

❖ **Straight:** directly and immediately

☆ Go *straight* home and tell your mother.

☆ We put the children *straight* to bed.

☆ I decided I'd leave *straight* after breakfast.

Points of Discussion

- 1) A certain level of stress can be positive. Can you think of any cases where stress was useful to or necessary for you?
- 2) Do you have anyone to talk to when you are stressed? Why do you consult this person? Tell me about him or her with as much detail as possible?
- 3) Do you know how to recognize stress in yourself? Do you have a kind of red warning flag that indicates too much stress? How does stress affect you physically and emotionally?

Grammar Pointer

There are various ways in English to talk about obligations and responsibilities. One of them is using the modal verbs “must” and “have to”. Sometimes we can use *must* or *have to* to mean the same thing such as in:

☆ I need to be at the airport in one hour, so I must / have to go. However,

in this sentence:

I have to work overtime to beat the deadline.

we use the *have to*. This modal is often used to discuss our daily responsibilities and is commonly used to describe workplace situations. We'll discuss in detail the differences of the two.

Must	Have to
The speaker thinks it is necessary.	Someone else thinks it is necessary.
☆ I <i>must</i> buy a present for my mother. ■ It's her birthday, and I decide to do that.	☆ I <i>have to</i> buy a present for my mother-in-law. ■ It is not my decision - my husband asked me to do it.
☆ I <i>must</i> ask my secretary to book a flight for me. ■ It is important for me not to forget.	☆ I <i>have to</i> call the travel agency. ■ My boss asked me to book a flight.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☆ "Dogs <i>must</i> be kept on a lead." ■ Written on a sign in the park = a rule which must be respected 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☆ I <i>have to</i> keep my dog on a lead. ■ That's what the sign tells me to do.
In the negative form, the meaning changes!	
Mustn't	Don't have to
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☆ You <i>mustn't</i> tell Harry. ■ It's important not to tell Harry. ■ Don't tell Harry. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☆ You <i>don't have to</i> tell Harry. ■ You can tell Harry if you like, but it isn't necessary. It's your decision.

IMPORTANT!

The past form of 'have to' and 'must' is 'had to'. 'Must' does not exist in the past.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☆ <i>Did he have to</i> leave so early? ☆ <i>Did they have to</i> do the work over again? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☆ She <i>had to</i> pick the children up from school. ☆ He <i>had to</i> stay overnight in Dallas. |
|--|---|

Topic 9

I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. There is going to be a sale at one of your favorite shops. You want to know more about the sale. Call the shop and ask three or four questions to find out everything you can about the sale.

Development of Ideas

Introduction	Greeting
Body	Reason for calling
	Inquiries
	Expression of strong interest
Conclusion	Closing message

Hi, this is Kim Jin Kyong from Songpa. I phoned to inquire about your shop's **upcoming** sale. I **overheard** from a neighbor that there's going to be a sale next week. Would you be kind enough to *clear this up* for me? When's the whole **duration** of the sale? Are all products on sale, or are there only selected participating items? How much is the discount? Do you apply a **uniform** discount for all items? I hope you can **enlighten** me about this matter. I want to be at the **head** of the line to *get hold of* the best products possible at a *marked down*. Thank you very much for your assistance.

Vocabulary:

Upcoming	happening soon
Overheard	to hear what people are saying during a conversation that you are not involved in
Duration	the length of time that something lasts
Uniform	the same
Enlighten	to provide someone with information and understanding
Head	the top or front part of something

Idioms and Expressions:

Clear something up	to give or find an explanation for something, or to deal with a problem or argument
Get hold of	to find someone or obtain something
Mark down	to reduce the price of something

Useful Expressions

- Would you be kind enough to **clear this up** for me?
❖ **Clear something up:** to give or find an explanation for something, or to deal with a problem or argument

☆ They never *cleared up* the mystery of the missing money.
☆ I think that we can *clear* this matter *up* without calling in the police.

- I want to be at the **head** of the line to **get hold of** the best products possible at a **marked down**.
❖ **Head:** the top or front part of something

☆ Jenny marched proudly at the *head* of the procession.
☆ We walked straight to the *head* of the queue.

- ❖ **Get hold of:** to find someone or obtain something

☆ I've managed to *get hold of* some very good wine.
☆ Can you *get hold of* Mike and tell him the meeting's postponed?

- ❖ **Mark down:** to reduce the price of something

☆ We are going to *mark* all this merchandise *down* next Monday.
☆ We *marked down* the merchandise.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Tell me about your last visit to an outlet store/ thrift store. Where is it? What did you buy? What can you say about the store? Give as much detail as possible.
- 2) Now you are going to buy a new computer. Ask three or four questions about the new computer.

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ Are **all** products on sale or are there only selected participating items?
- ☆ Do you apply a uniform discount for **all** items?

As you may notice, the sentences above use the word *all*. Is it right if we say, “Do you apply a uniform discount for **each** item?” or “Do you apply a uniform discount for **every** item?”

The above sentences used in the sample answer used *all* because it refers to the items of the shop as a whole — not individual items. *All* is similar in meaning with *every*. It is often a difference in form more than in meaning. For example, **all** of us means the same thing as **every** one of us.

It is also used to make general statements:

- ☆ **All** cars have breaks.
- ☆ **All** students must wear uniforms.
- ☆ **All** information is confidential.

All	-	uncountable Noun	All cheese contains protein.
	(of) the	plural noun	All (of) the people in the room were silent.
	(of) my, your, etc.	plural countable noun	I invited all (of) my friends to the party.
	(of) this, that	uncountable noun	Do I need to put all this sugar?
	(of) these, those	plural countable noun	Look at all those balloons!
	We use all (of) before determiners plus nouns to make more specific statements		

Since all and every are similar in meaning, let's discuss the differences of every and each.

	Every	Each
Usage	Used to refer to the members of a group in total ☆ Every sentence must have a verb. (All sentences in general.)	Used to members of a group individually ☆ Study each sentence carefully. (Study the sentences one by one.)
	<i>Every</i> is more usual for a large number. ☆ Carla loves reading. She has read every book in the library. (=all the books) ☆ I would like to visit every country in the world. (=all the countries)	<i>Each</i> is more usual for a small number. ☆ There were four books on the table. Each book was a different color. ☆ At the beginning of the game, each player has three cards.
	We say <i>every</i> (NOT <i>each</i>) to say how often something happens. ☆ There's a bus every ten minutes (NOT <i>each</i> ten minutes).	<i>Each</i> (but not <i>every</i>) can be used for two things. ☆ In a football match, each team has 11 players. (NOT <i>every</i> team)
Structure	<i>Every</i> + singular noun ☆ Every soldier saluted as the President arrived.	<i>Each</i> + singular noun ☆ Each artist sees things differently. Can be used alone (without a noun) ☆ None of the rooms was the same. Each was different. (=each room)
	You can say <i>every one of</i> (BUT NOT <i>every of</i>) ☆ I've read <i>every one of</i> those books. (NOT <i>every of</i> those books) ☆ I've read <i>every one of</i> them.	You can say <i>each of</i> (the.../ these.../ etc) ☆ Each of her cars was a different color. ☆ Each of you must work alone.
	every + <i>virtually, almost, nearly</i> ...to emphasize we are talking about a group as a whole ☆ His team lost almost every game.	

Chapter

5

Hobbies

-
-
-
-
-
-
-
- Topic 1. Hobbies
-
- Topic 2. TV program
-
- Topic 3. Books
-
- Topic 4. Computer Games
-
- Topic 5. Cooking
-
- Topic 6. Music
-
- Topic 7. Singing
-
- Topic 8. Musical Instrument
-
- Topic 9. Online Shopping
-
- Topic 10. Role Play: Inquiring
about the party
-
- Topic 11. Role Play: Inquiring
about concert tickets

Topic 1

Tell me about your hobbies. What kind of hobbies do you have?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	State your hobby/hobbies
Body	Details about your hobby Purpose and benefit of your hobby/hobbies
Conclusion	Feeling towards your hobby/hobbies

I love mountain climbing. For me, the mountains are where I can enjoy nature and slowly **unwind** from the *hustle and bustle* of the city and escape from the **humdrum** of everyday life. The fresh air and the different sounds of nature *ease my mind* and **rejuvenate** my body. Thus, it is a perfect way to maintain good health. Moreover, because mountains are an **integral** element of Korea and *make up* about 70% of our country's lands, there are plenty of mountains to choose from. Last week, I went to Bukhansan with my friend. The **camaraderie** of other climbers was **uplifting** and the **scenery** on the way up was **captivating**. It took us about three hours to reach one of the **summits**, but it was all worth it. It was difficult getting started, but when we reached the top, it was **spectacular**. We really did get a *top of the world* feeling.

Vocabulary:

Unwind	to relax and allow your mind to be free from worry after a period of work or some other activity that has made you worried
Humdrum	boring because nothing new or interesting ever happens
Rejuvenate	to make something work much better or become much better again
Integral	forming an essential part of something and needed to make it complete
Camaraderie	a feeling of friendship that a group of people have, especially when they work together
Uplifting	making you feel happier and more hopeful
Scenery	the general appearance of the natural environment, especially when it is beautiful
Captivating	very attractive and interesting, in a way that holds your attention
Summit	the highest point of a mountain
Spectacular	very impressive

Idioms and Expressions:

Hustle and bustle	busy and noisy activity
Ease someone's mind	to make someone feel less worried about something
Top of the world	in a position of great happiness or success

Useful Expressions

- The mountains are where I can enjoy nature and slowly unwind from the **hustle and bustle** of the city and escape from the **humdrum** of everyday life.
 - ❖ **Hustle and bustle:** busy and noisy activity
- ☆ I can't stand the *hustle and bustle* of big cities.
- ☆ There is a lot of *hustle and bustle* in this office at the end of the fiscal year.
- ☆ He wanted a little cottage far away from the *hustle and bustle* of city life.
 - ❖ **Humdrum:** boring because nothing new or interesting ever happens
- ☆ We lead such a *humdrum* life.
- ☆ Most of the work is fairly *humdrum*.

- Because mountains are an **integral** element of Korea and **make up** about 70% of our country's lands, there are plenty of mountains to choose from.
 - ❖ **Integral:** forming an essential part of something and needed to make it complete
- ☆ Home visits by staff are an *integral* part of the service.
- ☆ Vegetables are an *integral* part of our diet.
 - ❖ **Make up something:** to combine together to form something larger
- ☆ Women *make up* 40 percent of the workforce.
- ☆ This book is *made up* of twelve separate short stories.

- It took us about three hours to reach one of the summits, but it was all **worth it**.
❖ **Be worth it:** used for saying that there is a good enough reason for doing something, because it is important, enjoyable, useful etc

☆ It was hard work, but it was *worth it* in the end.
☆ After the plastic surgery, I had two black eyes and was very swollen, but I knew it would be *worth it*.
☆ Forget him, love, - he's just not *worth it*.

- We really did get a **top of the world** feeling.
❖ **Top of the world:** in a position of great happiness or success

☆ Since he got a new job, he's on *top of the world*.
☆ She felt she was on *top of the world* when her boyfriend proposed to her.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have your hobbies changed throughout the years? Why?
- 2) What hobbies would you like to try but have no courage trying out yet?
- 3) Some people take collecting stamps or going fishing as their hobbies. What do you think about it?

Grammar Pointer

The EMPHATIC forms of a verb are often used to give greater emphasis to the idea express by the verb. The auxiliaries **do**, **does** and **did** are used to give this additional emphasis. They are only in two tenses: the present simple and the past simple.

We really **did** get a top of the world feeling.

Emphatic Form Present Tense		
Person	Singular	Plural
First Person	I do study	We do study
Second Person	You do study	You do study
Third Person	He, she, it does study	They do study

Emphatic Form Past Tense		
Person	Singular	Plural
First Person	I did study	We did study
Second Person	You did study	You did study
Third Person	He, she, it did study	They did study

- The emphatic form is also used to contradict another speaker.
 - A: She doesn't work very hard.
 - B: I don't agree with you-- she **does work** very hard.
- When do, does, and did are used in questions, the form is **not** for emphasis.
 - ☆ **Do** you have to go there?
 - ☆ **Does** he want to eat out tonight?
- Also when do, does, and did are used to mean accomplish, carry out, etc., the form is not used for emphasis in these cases. Here are examples of that:
 - ☆ I **do** my homework after class.
 - ☆ He **does** a good job every day.

Topic 2

Tell me about the TV program that you like to watch. What do you like about it?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Favorite TV program
Body	Details about the TV program Reasons for liking it
Conclusion	Impact of the TV program to the speaker

My favorite TV program is ‘The Kingdom of Animals.’ **As far as I know**, it has been **airing** on TV for more than 30 years already, but I still enjoy watching it every weekend. It **features** wild animals in Africa and the way of living of sea mammals like whales or seals. Moreover, it warns the viewers of the *nearing extinction* of **rare** animals like rhinoceros, Siberian tigers, etc. The show aims not only to give fun to its audience but also to help the viewers be **acquainted** with nature and realize ‘the law of the jungle’. **Meanwhile**, it is also **impressive** that BBC can create and show such documentary films worldwide. I **salute** the courage and passion of its videographers. They really put all their efforts and *take risks* just to capture more realistic scenes and shots of various animals in different locations. **Hence**, one will truly enjoy and learn a lot while watching this program if he views this in a wider and more mature **perspective**— just like a real **documentarian**.

Vocabulary:

Air	to broadcast something on radio or television
Feature	to include someone or something as an important part
Extinction	a situation in which something no longer exists
Rare	not common; very unusual
Acquainted	to be informed or familiar
Impressive	admiring or respecting something special, important or very large
Salute	to express praise or respect for a person or an achievement, especially formally and in public
Perspective	a particular way of considering something
Hence	for this reason
Documentarian	someone whose job is to make documentaries

Idioms and Expressions:

Take a risk	to do something although you know that something unpleasant or dangerous could happen
-------------	---

Useful Expressions

- **As far as I know**, it has been **airing** on TV for more than 30 years already.
❖ **As far as I know**: indicates that you have a partial knowledge of thematter being discussed

☆ *As far as I know*, she isn't coming to the party.
☆ *As far as I know*, the marketing students are going to have a presentation today.

❖ **Air**:to broadcast something on radio or television

☆ Many viewers were shocked when the TV news *aired* graphic footage of the war.
☆ The game will be *aired* live on KBS at 7:00 tonight.

Other usage:

❖ **Air** : to say in public what your opinions or complaints aboutsomething are
☆ In an interview, the singer *aired* his views on family life.

- It warns the viewers of the **nearing** extinction of rare animals.
❖ **Nearing**: coming closer to a particular time or stage

☆ The teachers are preparing for the fast-*nearing* school year.
☆ She is a woman *nearing* 50.
❖ **Extinction**: a situation in which something no longer exists
☆ The *extinction* of the dinosaurs occurred millions of years ago.
☆ Many species of plants and animals are in danger of *extinction*.

- **Meanwhile**, it is also impressive that BBC can create and show such documentary films worldwide.
❖ **Meanwhile**: until something expectedhappens, or while something else is happening

☆ Carl's starting college in September. *Meanwhile*, he's travelling around Europe.
☆ The flight will be announced soon. *Meanwhile*, please remain seated.
☆ Cook the sauce over a medium heat until it thickens. *Meanwhile*, start boiling the water for the pasta.

- They really put all their efforts and **take risks** just to capture more realistic scenes and shots of various animals in different locations.
 - ❖ **Take a risk** : to do something although you know that something unpleasant or dangerous could happen

☆ A good pilot never *takes a risk*.
 ☆ I'm not reckless, but I don't mind *taking a risk* every now and then.

- **Hence**, one will truly enjoy and learn a lot while watching this program if he views this in a wider and more mature perspective.
- ❖ **Hence**: for this reason

☆ The cost of transport is a major expense for an industry. *Hence*, factory location is an important consideration.
 ☆ Alcohol can cause liver failure and *hence* death.

Points of Discussion

- 1) There might have been times when one of your family members insisted on watching his/her favorite TV program while you were watching. How did you manage this situation?
- 2) How does television influence people's behavior? Use specific reasons and specific examples to support your answer.

Grammar Pointer

Once you have learned about nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, you will be able to identify them in sentences and tell them apart from each other. Some words can be used as more than one part of speech. This is particularly true of words that can be both nouns and verbs. Pay attention to how a word is used in a sentence before you decide if it is a noun, verb, adverb or adjective.

For example, in the sentence below, program is used as a noun.

My favorite TV **program** is ‘The Kingdom of Animals.’”

But in the following sentence, program is a verb.

☆ They **program** the computer to calculate the rate of exchange in twelve currencies.

Remember that **verbs** show **action or state of being**, and **nouns** identify a **person, place or thing**. You should learn to use both forms correctly.

	Noun	Verb
Feature	Each room has its own distinctive <i>features</i> .	It <i>features</i> wild animals in Africa and the way of living of sea mammals like whales or seals.
	an important part or aspect of something	to include someone or something as an important part
Show	The <i>show</i> aims to give fun to its audience.	I must <i>show</i> you this new book I've just bought.
	a television or radio program	to make it possible for something to be seen
Film	It is also impressive that BBC can create and show such documentary <i>films</i> worldwide.	They <i>film</i> the whole program in Paris.
	a series of moving pictures, usually shown in a cinema or on television and often telling a story	to record moving pictures with a camera, usually to make a film for the cinema or television
Salute	The soldier gave a <i>salute</i> and the officer returned it.	I <i>salute</i> the courage and passion of its videographers.
	a gesture of respect made to someone by raising the right hand to the side of the head	to express praise or respect for a person or an achievement, especially formally and in public

View	Do you have any <i>views</i> on what we should do now?	One will truly enjoy and learn a lot while watching this program if he <i>views</i> this in a wider and more mature perspective.
	an opinion or belief or idea, or a way of thinking about something	to have a particular opinion or way of thinking about someone or something

INTONATION: Noun or Verb

Knowing when and where to stress the words you use is very important for understanding, and is part of a good accent. A clear example is that of the different stress in nouns and verbs.

Usually (although there are some exceptions), the stress of a **verb** is on the last syllable, and that of a **noun** is on the first syllable.

It will be useful for you to be aware of the stress in both cases. Here are some examples:

to sus**PECT**: meaning, to have an opinion

a **SUSpect**: meaning, a person under suspicion

to pre**SENT**: meaning, to give, to introduce

a **PRESent**: meaning, a gift, now

to re**CORD**: meaning, to store sounds or moving pictures using electronic equipment

a **REcord**: meaning, ormation kept about something that has happened

Topic 3

What kinds of books do you like to read? Why do you like it? Give as many details as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Kind(s) of book/books you like to read
Body	Reasons for liking it
	Details about the book/books
Conclusion	Influence of the book to the speaker

I really love reading Korean comic books called manhwa. I *got into* this interest *way back* in middle school. I was greatly influenced by my classmates and friends. I can still remember the first time I received a comic book as a birthday present. I was very much **ecstatic** *back then* because that was something I really wanted to receive. Comics' **glossy** pages and **animated** contents are really **captivating** that one will certainly become curious to **scan** the pages. Moreover, you surely wouldn't want to stop once you started reading. Whenever I get the chance to read manhwa, I feel like I'm being transported to a different **dimension**. I suddenly feel like I'm part of the story **therein**. However, I rarely get the chance to read these days because I now lead a team assigned to a huge project in our company. I really have to work *day and night*, so whenever I have spare time, I make sure to read because it also serves as my *stress buster*.

Vocabulary:

Thrilling	causing a surge of emotion or excitement
Ecstatic	extremely happy or pleased
Glossy	shiny
Animated	full of life, action, or spirit; lively; vigorous
Captivating	holding the attention of someone by being extremely interesting, exciting, pleasant or attractive
Scan	to examine an area carefully but quickly, often because you are looking for a particular person or thing
Dimension	a part or feature or way of considering something

Idioms and Expressions:

Day and night	all the time
Stress buster	anything that relieves or reduces stress or tension

Useful Expressions

- I got into this interest **way back** in middle school.
❖ **Get into something:** to start enjoying something, or to become enthusiastic about it

☆ You feel shy when you start your speech, but then you *get into it*.
☆ She's really *getting into* the internet.

❖ **Way back** a long time ago in the past

☆ I graduated *way back* in 1982.
☆ She knows him from *way back*.

- I was very much **ecstatic back then**.
❖ **Back then:** refers to a time in the past

☆ *Back then*, we used to walk to school because there were no buses and we couldn't afford a car.
☆ We went on a trip to Europe when I was in grade school. I was extremely happy *back then*.
☆ I wonder what way of living my ancestors had *back then*.

- I suddenly feel like I'm part of the story **therein**.
❖ **Therein:** in a particular place, activity, or piece of writing that has been mentioned

☆ You must sign the contract and the sections contained *therein*.
☆ It is a thrilling tale of a haunted house and the ghosts *therein*.

- I really have to work **day and night**.
❖ **Day and night:** all the time

☆ Electricians have been working *day and night* to restore electricity supplies to the area.
☆ They've worked *day and night* to publicize their campaign.

- I make sure to read because it also serves as my **stress buster**.
❖ **Stress buster:** anything that relieves or reduces stress or tension

☆ Meditation is a *stress buster*.
☆ Exercise is the cheapest and most effective *stress buster*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Are there some books that have been especially memorable for you? What was the book about and how was reading that book influenced you?
- 2) Do you agree that it is very important that people read good books when they are young? Tell me about your opinion with as much detail as possible.
- 3) I'm sorry, but there's a situation that you need to solve. You lost a book that you borrowed from a friend. Call him/her and explain the situation. Then, give an alternative solution on how you can solve the problem.

Grammar Pointer

In one of the previous chapters, we discussed the location of adverbs of frequency. In this lesson, we will study the position of the other kinds of adverbs.

- **Adverbs of manner** which answer the question ‘how?’ normally comes immediately after the verb or after the object if there is one.

Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Adverb
She	drives	the car	carefully.
It	is raining		heavily.

- ☆ She combed her hair **gently**. (NOT She combed gently her hair.)
☆ She speaks English **well**. (NOT She speaks well English.)

- **Adverbs of place** (e.g. here, there, everywhere, nowhere, on the roof etc.) are usually placed after the verb or after the object if there is one.

Subject	Verb	Direct Object	Adverb
I	met	him	there.

- ☆ I looked **everywhere** but couldn't find anything.
☆ He stayed **behind**.

- **Adverbs of time** are usually put at the end of the sentence but they may also come at the beginning of the sentence.

- ☆ I will show you the house *tomorrow*.
- ☆ *Tomorrow*, I will show you the house.

If you want to emphasize when the action is done, place the adverbs at the beginning of the sentence.

- If you have two similar types of adverbial phrases (time, manner, degree etc.), the more specific one comes first.

Subject	Verb	More specific (adverb of place)	Less specific (adverb of place)
My father	lives	in a little house	in the country.

- Shorter adverbial phrases come before longer ones, irrespective of the content.

Subject	Verb	Shorter adverbial phrase	Longer Adverbial Phrase
He	jogs	after dinner	every day of the week.

- When two or more adverbs modify the same verb, they usually come in the following order: manner, place, frequency, time and purpose.

Subject	Verb	Adverb of manner	Adverb of place	Adverb of frequency	Adverb of time	Purpose
He	strolls	slowly	along the promenade	every morning	at seven o'clock	to exercise his dog.

- ☆ He performed **well at the concert last night**.

- If an adverb describes an **adjective** or another **adverb**, it goes before it:

- ☆ I find these books **so thrilling** and entertaining.
- ☆ Comics' glossy pages and animated contents are **really captivating**.

NOTE: An exception to this rule is **enough** which is placed after the adjective or adverb that it modifies:

I got up quite early but not early enough to eat a good breakfast.

IMPORTANT!

Never put an adverb between the verb and the object.

He speaks English **well**. (Correct)

He speaks **well** English. (Incorrect)

Shifting the position of adverbs changes their meaning sometimes and often in uncertain ways. Sentences must be examined for what they actually mean. Let's take a look at the following sentences:

Only I spoke to his brother.
I **only** spoke to his brother.
I spoke **only** to his brother.
I spoke to his **only** brother.

This means that you were the only person to speak to his brother.
This means that you only talked. You didn't write a letter.
You didn't speak to anybody else.
He only has one brother and I spoke to him.

Topic 4

Do you play computer games? Could you tell me about your favorite game and why you like it?

Development of Ideas		
Introduction	Preference	
Body	If Yes:	If No:
	Favorite computer game(s)	Reasons why the speaker doesn't play computer games
	Details about the computer game(s)	
	Advantages	Disadvantages
Conclusion	Overall thoughts about computer games	

My favorite game is StarCraft. I like playing it because of the *simple fact* that it's really fun and entertaining to play. The **gameplay** is nothing really new in the gaming department, but it's still good, especially if your **opponent** is very skillful and **competitive**. Personally, I enjoy everything related to **science fiction**. This explains why I like its story about the **galactic** war among the three great races, each led by strong leaders. Although it's *chiefly* for leisure, I believe this game improves my strategy skills. Before, I was so *hooked* to this game. It's a good thing I learned how to control myself. Overall, it was the dark **plot**, strong characters, and its fantastic sci-fi **ambiance** that *got me* to like this game very much.

Vocabulary:

Gameplay	the story and structure of a computer game, and the way that it is played
Opponent	a contestant that you are matched against
Competitive	wanting very much to win or be more successful than other people
Science fiction	books, films or cartoons about an imagined future, especially about space travel or other planets
Galactic	relating to a galaxy
Hooked	enjoying something so much that you are unable to stop having, watching, doing, etc. it
Plot	a series of related events that make up the main story in a book, film etc.
Ambiance	a particular environment or surrounding influence

Useful Expressions

- I like playing it because of the **simple fact** that it's really fun and entertaining to play.

❖ **Simple fact:** not involving anything else, or not complicated by anything else

☆ The *simple fact* is that he wants a divorce.

☆ The *simple fact* is that a change in spelling reflects a change in meaning.

- Although it's **chiefly** for leisure, I believe this game improves my strategy skills.

❖ **Chiefly:** mainly

☆ About one thousand people were present at the event, *chiefly* young ladies and gentlemen.

☆ They were *chiefly* interested in the arrival of a popular rock band.

- I was so **hooked** to this game.

❖ **Hooked:** enjoying something so much that you are unable to stop having, watching, doing, etc. it

☆ My grandmother is really *hooked* on gardening.

☆ I was *hooked* from the first page, and the story just got better and better.

- Its fantastic sci-fi ambiance that *got* me like this game very much.

❖ **Get:** to make someone do something, or to persuade them to do it

☆ I'll *get* Andrew to give you a call.

☆ She couldn't *get* them to understand what she was saying.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What do you think about the addiction to computer games? What will you do if your children become addicted to playing computer games?
- 2) Does playing violent computer games make players aggressive? Support your answer with details and examples.
- 3) Has there been a time when you weren't able to do your homework/work/house chores because you played computer games? What happened after?

Grammar Pointer

☆ Your opponent is **very** skillful and competitive.

☆ I like this game **very** much.

In the sentences above, we use the word *very*. **TOO**, **SO** and **VERY** are kinds of intensifiers. Oftentimes, people interchange their uses. All three words come in front of adjectives, but they don't have the same meanings.

Very	When you want to intensify an adjective	I was <i>very</i> young when I read that book.
		Paulo likes Frida <i>very</i> much.
		It's <i>very</i> dark out tonight.
		That restaurant is <i>very</i> expensive. I'll go there when I get paid.
Too	When you want to express excess	The coffee was <i>too</i> hot. I couldn't drink it.
		The coffee was <i>too</i> hot to drink.
		My pants are <i>too</i> long. I have to shorten them.
		I'm sorry. I can't go to that restaurant. It's <i>too</i> expensive.

Too is used with negative adjectives like expensive, tired, difficult, etc. **Too** implies a negative feeling and perhaps an unstated negative consequence.

Important: We don't use **TOO** with positive adjectives.

So	When you want to show cause and effect	I was <i>so</i> hooked to this game that I couldn't keep my eyes off it.
		My car is <i>so</i> old that I'm going to get rid of it.
		It was <i>so</i> dark outside that Agnes tripped over my bicycle.
		The restaurant was <i>so</i> expensive that Cesar had to borrow money from his girlfriend.

It is similar to **too**, but it can be used with positive **or** negative adjectives. It is often used with **that**.

LET'S COMPARE TOO AND VERY

When we want to show that because something is excessive or problematic and there is a consequence, we use **too** + adjective, as in the above examples. When we simply want to emphasize an adjective, we use **very**.

It's **very** cold today.
It's **too** cold today.

*This is just a statement that the weather is cold...very cold.
This implies that it is cold and there is some negative feeling or problem.*

That ring is **very** expensive.
That ring is **too** expensive.

*This is just a statement that the ring costs a lot of money.
This implies that the ring costs a lot of money and I cannot buy it.*

As said, too isn't used with positive adjectives.
Correct: Kim Tae Hee is **very** beautiful.
Incorrect: Kim Tae Hee is **too** beautiful.

Correct: Justin is **very** kind to his fans.
Incorrect: Justin is **too** kind to his fans.

Topic 5

You indicated in the survey that you like cooking. How did you become interested in cooking? What do you usually cook? Could you tell me something about it with as much detail as possible?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	When and how you become interested in cooking
Body	Favorite recipe
	Details about the dish
Conclusion	Satisfaction derived from cooking

I was not really fond of cooking until I got married. During my university years, meals usually meant **bland** food at the cafeteria. When I started working, cooking seemed like a **chore** -- a chore often solved by restaurant **dining** - and honestly, my kitchen knowledge is limited to cooking rice, egg, instant noodles and tteokbokki. Things changed a few weeks after getting married. My husband isn't very *keen on* cooking, and **thus**, I was left to *take on* the task. In the beginning, I had to call my mom often for **recipes**, consult a lot of cookbooks and watch cooking videos. I spent a lot of time in the kitchen, and *in no time*, I perfected galbi jjim, my husband's favorite. *Over time*, I have come to realize that cooking is one of my greatest passions in life. After preparing a meal, I always feel a sense of accomplishment especially when my husband and son **rave** about how delicious my dish is.

Vocabulary:

Bland	not having a strong taste or character or not showing any interest or energy
Chore	an ordinary job that must be done regularly
Dining	taking a meal
Recipe	a set of instructions telling you how to prepare and cook food, including a list of what food is needed for this
Rave	to speak or write in a very enthusiastic way about someone or something

Idioms and Expressions:

Keen on	wanting to do something, or wanting other people to do something
Take on	to accept some work or responsibility
Over time	gradually
In no time	very quickly or very soon

Useful Expressions

- My husband isn't very **keen** on cooking.
❖ **Keen:** wanting to do something, or wanting other people to do something

- ☆ They were very *keen* to start work as soon as possible.
☆ The captain wasn't *keen on* having him in the team.

- **Thus**, I was left to **take on** the task.
❖ **Thus:** as a result of the fact that you have just mentioned

- ☆ Someone had removed all the evidence. *Thus*, it was now impossible for the police to continue their investigation.
☆ They planned to reduce staff, and *thus* to cut costs.
❖ **Take on:** to accept some work or responsibility

- ☆ I can't *take on* any more work at the moment.
☆ She *took* too much *on* and made herself ill.

- **In no time**, I perfected galbi jjim, my husband's favorite.
❖ **In no time:** very quickly or very soon

- ☆ The children ate their dinner *in no time*.
☆ We'll have that fixed *in no time*.

- **Over time**, I have **come to** realize that cooking is one of my greatest passions in life.
❖ **Over time:** gradually

- ☆ Things will get better *over time*.
☆ *Over time*, she began to trust him.
❖ **Come to do something:** to begin to have a feeling or opinion
☆ She had *come to* regard him as one of her few real friends.
☆ I *came to* believe that he was innocent after all.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Could you tell me the recipe of your favorite food with as much detail as possible?
- 2) What national dishes from your country would you recommend to the world? Why? Tell me about these dishes in detail.
- 3) Have you experienced that the food you cooked was not delicious or a failure? What was it? What was the problem? Please tell me about the experience in as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

When you present a series of ideas in similar grammatical structures, they become easier to understand. If one element in a series is not parallel with the others, the result may be jarring and the meaning of the sentence may be altered. Thus, it is very important that your sentences are parallel in structure.

Let's take a look at the following sentences:

- ☆ I had to call my mom often for recipes, consult a lot of cookbooks and watch cooking videos.
☆ I had to call my mom often for recipes, consult a lot of cookbooks and watching cooking videos.

Which of these sentences sound better?

First Sentence

I had to	call my mom often for recipes, consult a lot of cookbooks and watch cooking videos	Infinitive Infinitive Infinitive
----------	---	--

Second Sentence

I had to	call my mom often for recipes, consult a lot of cookbooks and watching cooking videos	Infinitive Infinitive Gerund
----------	--	------------------------------------

The second sentence is therefore unbalanced. The first two phrases use the base form of the verb because they are part of an infinitive phrase. The third, meanwhile, has an -ing form.

Groups of words (phrases) should be matched with word groups of the same pattern.

When ideas are presented in a series or a list, the same parts of speech should be used to ensure parallel structure. This applies whether the list consists of single words, phrases or clauses—single words should be balanced with single words, phrases with phrases and clauses with clauses.

PARALLEL WORDS:	The wrestler looked <i>strong, fit</i> and <i>agile</i> .
PARALLEL PHRASES:	Success at university depends on <i>attending your classes, reviewing your notes,</i> and <i>keeping up with your readings</i> .
PARALLEL CLAUSES:	The tennis star <i>whom I have met</i> and <i>whom you saw last Saturday</i> will speak.

CORRECTING FAULTY PARALLELISM

The following chart presents some nonparallel structures and shows how they can be repaired to restore the smoothness and clarity to the sentence. Notice how coordinating conjunctions (and, but, or, and so) often join series and can signal you to check the items they connect for parallelism.

CORRECTING FAULTY PARALLELISM IN SERIES		
Nonparallel Structures	Corrected Sentences	
Gerund Gerund Noun <i>Planning, drafting</i> and <i>revision</i> are three steps in the writing process.	Gerund Gerund Gerund <i>Planning, drafting, and revising</i> are three steps in the writing process.	
Noun clause Some experts feel <i>that our population is too large</i> , Independent clause but <i>it will diminish</i> .		Noun clause Some experts feel <i>that our population is too large</i> Noun clause but <i>that it will diminish</i> .

Nonparallel Words, Phrases, and Clauses in Comparisons

As the old saying goes, you cannot compare apples with oranges. In comparisons, you generally should compare a phrase with the same type of phrase and a clause with the same type of clause. Furthermore, you should make sure your ideas themselves, as well as the structures you use to express them, are logically parallel.

CORRECTING FAULTY PARALLELISM IN COMPARISONS		
Nonparallel Structures	Corrected Sentences	
Most people prefer <i>corn</i> (Noun) to <i>eating potato</i> (Gerund phrase).	Most people prefer <i>corn</i> (Noun) to <i>potato</i> (Noun).	
I left my job <i>at 7:00 PM</i> (Prepositional phrase) rather than <i>stopping work at 5:00 PM</i> (Participial phrase).	I left my job <i>at 7:00 PM</i> (Prepositional phrase) rather than <i>at the usual 5:00 PM</i> (Prepositional phrase).	

Topic 6

What kind of music do you listen to? When do you usually listen to it? Give as much detail as much as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Music preference
Body	Frequency of listening to music
	When and how you listen to music
Conclusion	Benefits acquired from listening to music

I listen to almost all kinds of music, but I enjoy **acoustic** and **upbeat** pop music the most. I listen to acoustic music whenever I want to relax and unwind. It never fails to give me this positive and **uplifting** feeling that usually makes me think of the good old days. On the other hand, I listen to upbeat pop music whenever I drive, especially when I'm **stuck** in a traffic jam where usually my impatience is *getting the better of me*. I also listen to it whenever I exercise, like jogging and stretching. It keeps me active and **hyper**. However, I must say that even though acoustic and pop are my favorite musical **genres**, I still listen to other musical styles because I believe *variety is the spice of life*.

Vocabulary:

Acoustic	describes a musical instrument that is not made louder by electrical equipment
Upbeat	happy and positive
Uplifting	making you feel happier or more hopeful
Stuck	to become firmly fixed in one position, and therefore difficult or impossible to move
Hyper	behaving in an excited and nervous way
Genre	a particular style used in cinema, writing, or art, which can be recognized by certain features

Idioms and Expressions:

Getting the better of someone	referring to a feeling that becomes too strong to control
Variety is the spice of life	means one should try many different kinds of experiences, because trying different things keeps life interesting

Useful Expressions

- It never fails to give me this positive and **uplifting** feeling that usually makes me think of **the good old days**.

❖ **Uplifting:** making you feel happier or more hopeful

☆ For me, it was a marvelously *uplifting* performance.

☆ It was a charming and *uplifting* love story.

❖ **The good old days:** a time in the past when everything was much better than now

☆ They loved to sit and chat about *the good old days*.

☆ I wish my grandma would stop going on about *the good old days*.

- On the other hand, I listen to upbeat pop music whenever I drive, especially when I'm stuck in a traffic jam where usually my impatience is **getting the better of me**.

❖ **Getting the better of someone:** referring to a feeling that becomes too strong to control

☆ Don't let your hatred *get the better of you*.

☆ His curiosity *got the better of him* when he opened the box.

☆ My temper *got the better of me*, and I said hurtful things to him.

- Acoustic and pop are my favorite musical **genres**.

❖ **Genre:** a particular style used in cinema, writing, or art, which can be recognized by certain features

☆ What *genre* does the book fall into - comedy or tragedy?

☆ There's a whole *genre* of films about city-dwellers lost in the wilderness.

- I still listen to other musical styles because I believe **variety is the spice of life**.

❖ **Variety is the spice of life:** means one should try many different kinds of experiences, because trying different things keeps life interesting

☆ Remember that *variety is the spice of life*—it is fun to experiment sometimes.

☆ As they say, *variety is the spice of life*, so why only settle on something that's so boring?

Points of Discussion

- 1) How has your interest in music changed from your childhood to now? Tell me in detail about these changes.
- 2) People listen to music for different reasons and at different times. Why is music important to many people? Use specific reasons and examples to support your choice.
- 3) Do you prefer listening to songs in your own language or in another language? Why?

Grammar Pointer

On the other hand, I listen to upbeat pop music **whenever** I drive, especially when I'm stuck in a traffic jam where usually my impatience is getting the better of me.

In the sentence above, the words *whenever* and *when* are both used. They may seem similar, but they actually differ in usage. Take a look at these explanations:

WHENEVER

- *Whenever* means '**each time something happens**'. We use the simple present (or the simple past) because '*whenever*' and '*every time*' express habitual action.
 - ☆ The child smiles *whenever* the puppy appears.
 - ☆ We take a hike *whenever* John visits.
 - ☆ I laugh *whenever* I see our old photographs.
- *Whenever* should be used to refer to events of whose date or time you are uncertain.
 - ☆ *Whenever* I go to theaters, I ask my companions to buy me popcorns.
[In this case, *whenever* applies to all times I go to theaters.]
 - ☆ Come over to my house *whenever* you want.
[*Whenever*, in this case, is not a specific time.]
 - ☆ *Whenever* he leaves the house, he always takes an umbrella.

WHEN

- *When* means '**at that moment, at that time, etc.**' We use different tenses in relationship to the clause beginning with *when*.

It is important to remember that *when* takes either the simple past OR the present tense - the dependent clause changes tense in relation to the '*when clause*'.

- ☆ He was talking on the phone *when* I arrived.
- ☆ *When* she called, he had already eaten lunch.
- ☆ We'll go to lunch *when* you come to visit.

- *When* should be used with **phrases of definite time.**

- ☆ *When* he left the house, he took an umbrella.
- ☆ *When* I go to the movies, I will get extra butter on my popcorn.
- ☆ *When* I went to the movies, I got extra butter on my popcorn.
[In the above sentences, *when* pertains to definite times of going to the movies.]
- ☆ Come over my house *when* you need help.
[*When*, in the above sentence, tells of the time during which "you need help." This is a specified time, and therefore calls for the use of the word *when*.]

Other examples:

You say	Not
When I was young, I had a pet.	Whenever I was young, I had a pet.
Do you remember when I was in the car with you yesterday?	Do you remember whenever I was in the car with you yesterday?

Topic 7

Do you like singing? Where and when do you sing? What kind of song do you sing? Have you had a memorable experience with a song?

Development of Ideas		
Introduction	Preference	
Body	If Yes:	If No:
	When and where the speaker enjoys singing	Reason/s for disliking singing
	Song choice	
	Memorable experience with a song	Further explanation about speaker's dislike on singing
Conclusion	Opinion about singing	

I like singing. I think that this is one of the keys to long life. It helps one **alleviate** too much stress *brought by hectic* schedule and workloads. Just like many Koreans, I go to a noraebang with my friends or colleagues whenever we get free time from work. *Noraebang* is a Korean term for singing room. *Norae* means song, while *bang* means room. If you go to this place, you'll get an individual room where you and your friends can stay for a few hours and sing along. Moreover, each room is furnished with large-sized plasma screen televisions, disco lights, and **fancy** karaoke machines with thousands of songs to choose from. I always sing romantic ballad songs, like Elvis Presley's Can't Help Falling in Love. This is my favorite song because it *brings back* wonderful memories of me and my wife when we were still on the **courting** stage. I truly believe that singing brings positive **vibes** that are very much helpful to stay happy and be the *picture of good health*.

Vocabulary:

Alleviate	provide physical relief, as from pain; relieve
Hectic	full of activity; very busy and fast
Fancy	not plain or simple but with a lot of decorations or extra parts
Courting	having a romantic relationship with someone that you hope to marry
Vibe	the mood or character of a place, situation, or piece of music

Idioms and Expressions:

Picture of (good) health

in a very healthy condition

Useful Expressions

- It helps one **alleviate** too much stress **brought by** hectic schedule and workloads
- ❖ **Alleviate:** provide physical relief, as from pain; relieve

- ☆ This drug will *alleviate* your headache.
- ☆ I burned myself, and I put on lotion to *alleviate* the pain.
- ☆ Your letter *alleviated* my winter's dreary grays.

- ❖ **Brought by:** caused by

- ☆ The residents are worried about the health hazards *brought by* the oil spill.
- ☆ What are the social changes *brought by* industrialization?

- This is my favorite song because it **brings back** wonderful memories of me and my wife.
- ❖ **Bring back:** to cause ideas, feelings, or memories to be in your mind again

- ☆ The photos *brought back* some wonderful memories.
- ☆ Visiting my old school *brought back* the times of when I was a pupil there.

- I truly believe that singing brings positive vibes that are very much helpful to stay happy and be the **picture of good health**.
- ❖ **Picture of (good) health:** in a very healthy condition

- ☆ The doctor says I am the *picture of good health*.
- ☆ With balanced diet and exercise, one will surely be the *picture of health*.
- ☆ Each of the children is the *picture of good health*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have you experienced an interesting or memorable thing while singing? What was it? What exactly happened? What did you do at that time? Give as much detail as possible.
- 2) Have you ever performed in public? Have you performed for a big audience? If so, tell me about your experience in detail.
- 3) What are singing rooms in your country like? What kind of services do they provide? Please give me a full description.

Grammar Pointer

I truly believe that singing brings positive vibes that are very much helpful to stay happy and healthy.

Notice that the sentences above use relative clauses:

that singing brings positive vibes
that *are* very much helpful

Notice that they contain a verb separate from that of the independent clause. The verb in a relative clause agrees in person and number to the word -- the person or thing -- to which the relative pronoun refers.

I truly believe *that* singing brings positive vibes *that* are very much helpful to stay happy and healthy.

Singing (singular) is the antecedent of the first *that*. Thus, we need a singular verb (add *-s*). Vibes (plural) is the antecedent of the second, and thus, we need a plural verb.

Other examples:

- ☆ Most instructors appreciate students who **ask** good questions.
- ☆ The student who **asks** a lot of questions is a valuable asset to a class.
- ☆ The classes, which **are** held in the fall, usually fill up fast.

The construction *one of those who* causes confusion when it comes to subject-verb agreement in the relative clause. Decide whether *one* or *those* is the antecedent of *who* in choosing the right verb.

Connie is *one of those bosses who* believe in giving their employees freedom to make decisions. Here, the antecedent is bosses, and therefore the plural verb *believe* should be used.

If we add ONLY will make it clear that the antecedent is *one* rather than *bosses*, and therefore the singular verb *believes* is correct.

Connie is the *only one of the bosses who* believes in giving her employees freedom to make decisions.

Other examples:

- ☆ One of the dogs that are sick is mine.
- ☆ That is the **only one** of the dogs **that is** still sick.

Topic 8

Can you play any musical instrument? When did you learn to play it and how often do you play it? Tell me about it with as much detail as you can.

Development of Ideas		
Introduction	Preference	
Body	If Yes:	If No:
	Musical instrument played	Reason/s for not playing any musical instrument
	When the speaker first learned to play the instrument	Other inclinations or interests
	Frequency of playing the instrument	Musical instrument the speaker would like to play (optional)
Conclusion	Fulfillment derived from playing the instrument	Plans of pursuing other interests/playing any musical instruments

Yes, I've been playing the piano for about 20 years now since I started at the age of 9. As a child, I was always interested to *follow in the footsteps* of my grandmother. She has always been a **dedicated** musician and has greatly influenced my decision to learn how to play the baby grand piano which **ornaments** our home. Every time she played, I was **lured** by her music. It seemed like there was something magical to it. That made me passionate about the instrument that I play. I play the piano almost every day because it's fun, and it helps *put my mind at ease*. I've had my **share of** stressful times; it's nice to pick up an instrument and just play. It's not like I'm limited either. I can play any kind of music *reflective of* the mood I'm in. This is especially good because it is difficult for me to *voice* my feelings and *put them into words*. In this sense, music helps me in expressing my feelings.

Vocabulary:

Dedicated	believing that something is very important and giving a lot of time and energy to it
Ornament	to add decoration to something
Lure	to persuade someone to do something by making it look very attractive

Idioms and Expressions:

Follow in the footsteps of somebody/something	to do something that was done before
Put somebody's mind at ease	to cause someone to stop worrying
Reflective of	showing that something exists, or showing what something is like
Put into words	express verbally

Useful Expressions

- I was always interested to **follow in the footsteps** of my grandmother.
❖ **Follow in the footsteps of somebody/something:** to do something that was done before

☆ She *followed in her father's footsteps* and went into medicine.
☆ My mother told us never to *follow in her footsteps*, that we should always try to do better.
☆ The company is *following in the footsteps* of other great research organizations.

- I was **lured** by her music.
❖ **Lure:** to persuade someone to do something by making it look very attractive

☆ The campaign is designed to *lure* tourists back to the province.
☆ You hope your kids will not be *lured* into smoking.

- I play the piano almost every day because it's fun, and it helps **put my mind at ease**.
❖ **Put somebody's mind at ease:** to cause someone to stop worrying

☆ He chose his words carefully to *put his mother's mind at ease*.
☆ Your assurances have really *put my mind at ease*.

- I've had my **share of** stressful times.
❖ **Share of something:** a reasonable or normal amount of something

☆ We certainly had our *share of good fortune*.
☆ He has suffered more than his fair *share of disappointments*.

- This is especially good because it is difficult for me to **voice** my feelings and **put them into words**.
❖ **Voice:** give expression to

☆ Matthew *voiced* some doubts about our plan.
☆ I have *voiced* my objections to the plan to management.
❖ **Put into words:** express verbally

☆ I can't even begin to *put into words* how saddened I am by the news of his death
☆ A scent is not easily *put into words*.

- I can play any kind of music **reflective of** the mood I'm in.
- ❖ **Reflective of something:** showing that something exists, or showing what something is like

- ☆ These cases are *reflective of* a more general problem.
- ☆ Her success is *reflective of* her hard work.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have you ever had trouble in learning how to play a musical instrument? If so, what was the problem? How did you handle that? Tell me about your experience in detail.
- 2) What musical instruments are unique to your country or culture? Please give me a brief description of those instruments.
- 3) What other type of musical instrument would you like to be able to play? Why would you like to play it?

Grammar Pointer

That **made** me passionate about the instrument that I play.

In the sentence above, the verb '*make*' is used to state that something made the speaker become something/someone. We follow this sentence pattern:

Subject	Verb (make)	Object	Object Compliment (adjective)	others
That	made	me	passionate	about the instrument that I play.

Other examples:

- ☆ The teacher *made the quiz easy*.
- ☆ His attitude *made him very unpopular* with his colleagues.
- ☆ Its beautiful beaches *make this a highly popular* area with tourists.

OTHER USES OF MAKE

- *Make* means to produce something.

Subject	Verb (make)	Direct Object
The company	has been making	quality furniture.

Subject	Verb (make)	Indirect Object	Direct object	Others
She	made	me	a beautiful dress	for my wedding.

- *Make* is a **causative verb**. This means that it can be used to indicate that a person or thing helps to make something happen.

We'll follow this sentence pattern:

Subject	Verb (make)	Person	Base Form of the verb	Others
Edward	made	me	do	his homework.

Other examples:

- ☆ My teacher *made me apologize* for what I had said.
- ☆ I like him because *he makes me laugh*.
- ☆ I *made him clean* his room.
- ☆ Her supervisor *made her work on* Sunday.

- Make someone something

Subject	Verb (Make)	Direct Object	Object Complement	others
They	made	him	head teacher	after Joanne left.

Other examples:

- ☆ The board of directors *made John president*.
- ☆ They *made her a reception manager* when Sally resigned.

Topic 9

You indicated in the survey that you like online shopping. Tell me about your favorite online shopping mall. What do they sell? What other services do they provide? Give as much detail as you can.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Favorite online shopping mall
Body	Reason/s for liking the online shopping mall
	Compare with competitors
	Main products
	Other services offered
Conclusion	Contentment drawn from the online shopping mall

I'm one of those people who prefer online shopping over *brick-and-mortar* shopping. First, it is because I have a **multitude** of choices, and I can shop *at my convenience*. Comparing prices is also much easier, and consumer reviews are available. Among the online shops in Korea, Lotte Online Shopping Mall is my favorite. Because they also own Lotte Department Store, they carry more products and provide better options for its customers. Their website also provides a very detailed and truthful description of the product. Most people **grumble** about the warranty and return policy, but I have had no problems regarding that. They have a complaint/warranty policy, and their customer service is *round the clock*. *On top of these*, they also sometimes offer large discounts when you eat at **fancy** restaurants, get a massage experience, and other great **deals**.

Vocabulary:

Multitude	a very large number of people or things
Grumble	to complain, especially continuously and about unimportant things
Fancy	expensive
Deal	an informal arrangement that you have with someone that gives you advantages or disadvantages

Idioms and Expressions:

Brick and mortar	used to describe a traditional business that operates in a building, when compared to one that operates over the internet
Round the clock	happening or done all day and all night
On top of something	in addition to; besides

Useful Expressions

- First, it is because I have a multitude of choices, and I can shop **at my convenience**.
❖ **At someone's convenience:** at a time that suits someone so that they do not have to make a special effort to do something

☆ Please come to my office *at your earliest convenience*.
☆ The goods will be delivered *at your convenience*.
☆ We can meet to discuss this further *at your convenience*.

- I'm one of those people who prefer online shopping over **brick-and-mortar** shopping.
❖ **Brick and mortar:** used to describe a traditional business that operates in a building, when compared to one that operates over the internet:

☆ Online retailers try to lure customers away from their *brick-and-mortar* competitors.
☆ I prefer the face-to-face customer experience in *brick-and-mortar* businesses.

Other related expressions:

- ❖ **Clicks and mortar:** used for talking about businesses that involve selling things in stores as well as on the Internet (also clicks and bricks)
❖ **Bricks, clicks and flips:** a variation of "bricks and clicks" that includes catalog shopping

- They have a complaint/warranty policy, and their customer service is **round the clock**.
❖ **Round the clock:** happening or done all day and all night

☆ He's very sick and needs *round-the-clock* care.
☆ She worked *round the clock*.

- **On top of these**, they also sometimes offer large discounts to eat at fancy restaurants, get a massage experience, and other great deals.
❖ **On top of something:** in addition to; besides

☆ *On top of this*, several other benefits are being offered.
☆ *On top of all his financial problems*, his wife left him.

Points of Discussion

- 1) How does shopping over the net differ from buying things in a shop? How is it better or worse?
- 2) Have you ever experienced any problems regarding online shopping, i.e., unsatisfactory item, exchange/return policy, etc?
- 3) I'm sorry, but there is a problem that you need to solve. You bought a sweater in an online shopping mall, but you are not satisfied with the quality. You plan to return it. Call the online shopping mall's customer service department and ask three or four questions about their return or exchange policy.

Grammar Pointer

Among the online shops in Korea, Lotte Online Shopping Mall is my favorite.

In the sentence above, we use *among*. Generally, we use **among** when speaking about more than two things, and *between* to denote a position between two things.

Let's examine these sentences:

- ☆ The guard stood *between* the door and the street.
- ☆ Just *between* you and me, I'm surprised that a graduate of Yale wouldn't speak better English.

- ☆ We wandered *among* the poppies, looking for the road to Oz.
- ☆ Let's keep this information among ourselves.

It is **NOT** strictly correct that **between** is used for two things and **among** for more than two. When more than two entities are involved or when the number of entities is unspecified, the word choice depends on what you want to say.

- **Between** should be used where the relationship is distinctly one-to-one.
 - ☆ *The agreement was entered into between the Seller, the Purchaser and the Guarantor.*
- **Among** should be used where the entities are considered as a group, mass or collectivity.
 - ☆ *There is consensus among shareholders that this approach be adopted.*

Topic 10

Your friend calls you to invite you to a party at his house. Ask him three or four questions about the party.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Greeting
Body	State reason for calling
	Ask questions
	Express gratefulness for the invitation
Conclusion	Closing statement/message

Hello. Thank you so much for inviting me to your party. I'm really excited to attend, so I would like to ask a few questions related to it. First of all, I want to know what the **theme** is in order for me to be in the proper **attire** for the event. It's very important that I wear appropriate clothes *so as not to* attract other people's attention. Secondly, I would like to ask who else you asked to come over. Of course, it is **essential** for me to know who I'll be **mingling** with for the entire night. Finally, could you tell me what time the party starts? I want to come early, so I can help you with the *last-minute* preparations. Again, thank you for your very kind **gesture**. I truly appreciate your invitation. I'll see you then, and let's *paint the town red!* Bye!

Vocabulary:

Theme	a particular style
Attire	the clothes that someone is wearing
Essential	absolutely necessary; vitally necessary
Mingle	to bring or combine together or with something else; get involved or mixed-up with
Gesture	something done as an indication of intention

Idioms and Expressions:

Last-minute	just before a deadline; at the last minute
Paint the town red	to go out and enjoy the evening, often drinking a lot of alcohol and dancing

Useful Expressions

➤ It's very important that I wear appropriate clothes **so as not to** attract other people's attention.

❖ **So as to:** in order to

☆ Mail your package early *so as to* ensure its timely arrival.

☆ You have to study hard *so as to* get good grades.

☆ Parents work hard *so as to* provide good life to their children.

➤ It is essential to know who I'll be **mingling** with for the entire night.

❖ **Mingle:** to bring or combine together or with something else; get involved or mixed-up

☆ Jenny is the type of person who can easily *mingle* with people she's just known.

☆ In last night's party, I had no choice but to *mingle* with the guests so as not to disappoint my parents.

☆ During the camp, the organizers *mingled* the juniors and seniors.

➤ I want to come early, so I can help you with the **last-minute** preparations.

❖ **Last-minute:** just before a deadline; at the last minute

☆ You'll find both pros and cons when it comes to planning *last-minute* travel, ranging from shifts in costs to added travel restrictions.

☆ The Senate made *last-minute* changes in the proceedings.

☆ The couple had *last-minute* arrangements before the wedding.

➤ Let's **paint the town red!**

❖ **Paint the town red:** to go out and enjoy the evening, often drinking a lot of alcohol and dancing

☆ Jack finished his exams today, so he's gone out to *paint the town red*.

☆ To celebrate the victory, the team's supporters *painted the town red*.

☆ Trevor got a new job, so we're *painting the town red* tonight!

Points of Discussion

- 1) Describe the best party that you have been to. Why was it the best? Tell me about it in detail.
- 2) When was the last time you organized a party? Would you do it again? Why? why not?
- 3) What kind of activities do you usually do during the party?

Grammar Pointer

In Chapter 4, we discussed participles ending in –ed and –ing. If you can recall, adjectives ending in –ing describe a situation, person or thing while –ed adjectives describe how people feel. Do not interchange their uses.

Look at the following examples.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ✓ I'm really excited to attend.
✗ I'm really exciting. | ✓ I was bored at the party
✗ I was boring at the party. |
|---|---|

When using adjectives, make sure that you are modifying the correct noun or pronoun, and you are using the correct form of adjective. For instance:

☆ I'm difficult in driving.

In this sentence, you use the adjective difficult to describe “I.” However, what you really meant to say is that the act of driving is difficult. Thus, you can say:

☆ It is difficult to drive a car.

Other examples:

Incorrect: I am necessary to clean the room.

Correct: It is necessary for me to clean the room.

Incorrect: My head is sick.

Correct: I have a headache.

Incorrect: My height is tall.

Correct: I am tall.

Incorrect: My old is 18.

Correct: I'm 18 years old.

Incorrect: Today is busy.

Correct: Today, I'm very busy.

Incorrect: My work is tired.

Correct: My work is tiring.

Topic 11

Now, I'll give you a situation and ask you to act it out. Assume that you have to buy two concert tickets on the internet. Call the Customer Service department and ask three or four questions about the tickets.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Greeting
Body	State reason for calling
	Ask questions
	Express anticipation for quick response
Conclusion	Closing statement/message

Hello, is this PY Media? Hi. I'm thinking of buying tickets for two and I'd like to ask a few questions. I'd like to **book** tickets for Kaori Kobayashi's concert. I heard that she's coming to Korea this July. The problem is, I don't know when exactly she will perform. Will it be on the 8th or the 9th? Can we reserve tickets online, or do we need to go to your office? We would like to get seats near the stage. How much does it cost? That might be too **pricey**, so I want other options. Are there other seats close enough to the stage but are lower in price? **I'm looking forward to** your response. **I can hardly wait** for the concert! Thank you very much!

Vocabulary:

Book	to buy tickets, or to arrange to have or use something at a particular time in the future
Pricey	expensive

Useful Expressions

- I'd like to **book** tickets for Kaori Kobayashi's concert.
 - ❖ **Book** : to buy tickets, or to arrange to have or use something at a particular time in the future

- ☆ He *booked* a double room for two nights last September.
- ☆ I'd like to *book* seats tonight for "Phantom of the Opera".
- ☆ Is this The Fine Resto? I'd like to *book* a table for two at 8 PM tomorrow night.

➤ That might be too **pricey**.

❖ **Pricey** : expensive

☆ The clothes are beautiful but very pricey.

☆ It's a bit pricey but the food is wonderful.

➤ I'm looking forward to your response.

❖ **Look forward to something** : to feel happy and excited about something that is going to happen

☆ He had worked hard and was *looking forward to* his retirement.

☆ I'm really *looking forward to* my holiday.

Points of Discussion

- 1) How popular is live music in your country? When was the last time you went to a concert or live show? Whose concert was it? Tell me about your experience with as much detail as possible.
- 2) After watching a concert, there might be things that you'd like to do with your friends or whoever you watch the concert with. What are they?
- 3) I'm sorry, but you have a problem that you need to solve. You reserved tickets a week ago and just arrived at the concert hall with your friend. To pick up the tickets, you went to the ticket booth but they said that there was no record of the reservations. Explain the situation and offer some solutions to address this problem.

Grammar Pointer

I can **hardly** wait for the concert!

In the sentence above, we use the word *hardly*. This sentence means that I can almost wait but not quite possibly because I am too excited. In many cases, *hardly* is interchangeable with the adverbs *scarcely* and *barely*. They all mean almost nothing or almost not at all.

NOTE: Scarcely is **scarcely** used today in everyday English because it is a very old (Archaic) version, but you will find it nonetheless.

- ☆ Martha hardly slept last night because of all the construction noise.
- ☆ The kids barely arrived to the movie on time.
- ☆ Anna scarcely thinks about her old boyfriend.

Usually, you can choose which adverb to use - there is not much difference between hardly, barely and scarcely.

HARDLY/BARELY/SCARCELY IN INVERTED SENTENCES

These three adverbs are also used in inverted sentences. (Refer to Chapter 4 Topic 6.)

- ☆ I had hardly arrived home when the telephone rang.

Inverted Sentence: Hardly had I arrived home when the telephone rang.

- ☆ They had barely won the match when the coach had a heart attack.

Inverted Sentence: Barely had won the match when the coach had a heart attack.

- ☆ She had scarcely finished reading when she fell asleep.

Inverted Sentence: Scarcely had she finished reading when she fell asleep.

DOUBLE NEGATIVES

Hardly, barely and *scarcely* function as negative words and should not be used with another negative.

Incorrect	I <i>don't hardly</i> know where he goes.
Correct	I hardly know where he goes.
Incorrect	She <i>wasn't barely</i> able to tell us who called.
Correct	She was barely able to tell us who called.
Incorrect	He <i>didn't scarcely</i> have time to dress.
Correct	He scarcely had time to dress.

Chapter

6

Health & Sports

Topic 1

People do many things to stay healthy. What do you do to be in good health? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	State the activity
Body	Details of the activity
	Specific reasons
	Implementation and Frequency
Conclusion	Benefits of the chosen activity

Personally, I exercise and eat the right foods as much as possible to maintain a healthy body. I try to eat fruits and vegetables everyday, along with whole grains and protein. However, this is not *a piece of cake* for me. I usually eat what is available in the cafeteria since I don't have time to prepare my own food. However, when I have *time on my hands*, I buy healthy food **beforehand**. I also drink multivitamins to **nourish** my body with the necessary vitamins and minerals. Regarding my exercise routine, I usually jog or **brisk** walk about three miles twice a week. Sometimes, I go to the gym. These are my own ways of keeping my body *in good shape*.

Vocabulary:

Beforehand	before a particular event: used especially for talking about something done in preparation for the event
Nourish	provide with the food or other substances necessary for growth, health, and good condition

Idioms and Expressions:

A piece of cake	something very easy to do
Time on someone's hands	an interval with nothing to do
In good shape	to be in good condition physically and functionally sound and sturdy

Useful Expressions

- However, this is not **a piece of cake** for me.
❖ **A piece of cake:** something very easy to do

☆ The exam was *a piece of cake*.
☆ Long distance running is *a piece of cake* to his athletic brother.
☆ I did it only for 56 seconds! *Piece of cake!*

- However, when I have **time on my hands**, I buy healthy food **beforehand**.
❖ **Time on someone's hands:** an interval with nothing to do.

☆ I had a lot of *time on my hands* recently, so I studied three languages.
☆ Whenever she has *time on her hands*, she goes to the beach to paint.
❖ **Beforehand :** before a particular event

☆ If you do most of the cooking *beforehand*, you'll enjoy the evening more.
☆ I knew she was coming that afternoon because she had phoned *beforehand* to say so.

- These are my own ways of keeping my body **in good shape**.
❖ **In good shape:** to be in good condition physically and functionally sound and sturdy

☆ Your body is worth keeping *in good shape*.
☆ I have been keeping this antique vase *in good shape* for five years now.
☆ This car isn't *in good shape*. I'd like to have one that's in better condition.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I'd like to know about your medical check-ups. How often do you have a health check? Please describe the procedure in detail.
- 2) Do you think it is necessary for healthy people to take additional vitamins or mineral supplements? Use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.
- 3) Is obesity a great problem in your country? What are the most efficient ways to lose weight?

Grammar Pointer

There are some commonly used English phrases with “keep.” We are going to study some patterns so that you can easily understand and use them. One of the meanings of *keep* is:

- **to stay in a particular state, condition, or position, or to make someone or something do this**

From this, we can create patterns such as:

- 1) Keep (something/ something) + adjective

	keep	object	adjective
These are my own ways of	keeping	my body	in good shape.

- ☆ *Keep her warm* and give her plenty to drink.
- ☆ Why can't we just *keep things simple*?
- ☆ The toys he bought *kept the kids amused*.
- ☆ The noise from their party *kept me awake* half the night.

- 2) Keep + adjective

	keep	adjective
I wish you'd	keep	quiet

- ☆ I like to *keep busy*.
- ☆ *Keep still* while I brush your hair.
- ☆ I walked along the hall, *keeping close* to the side.

- **to do something many times, or to continue doing it.**

- 1) Keep + gerund

	keep	gerund	
I	keep	forgetting	to put the answering machine on.

- ☆ *Keep taking* the tablets.
- ☆ I *keep telling* you, but you won't listen!
- ☆ She pretended not to hear, and *kept on walking*.

2) Keep (someone/something) + participle

	keep	object	participle
Sorry	to keep	you	waiting.

☆ She *kept me talking* for forty-five minutes.

☆ Jane *kept the engine running*.

PHRASAL VERBS

Keep can also be a part of a phrasal verb such as in:

- 1) **Keep (somebody/something) from something**: to prevent someone from doing something or prevent something from happening

	Keep	Object	from	Object
His ex-wife had	kept	him	from	seeing his children.

☆ I hope I haven't *kept you from your work*.

☆ Put the pizza in the bottom of the oven to *keep the cheese from burning*.

☆ The play was so boring, I could hardly *keep myself from falling asleep*.

- 2) **Keep something from somebody**: to prevent someone from knowing something, by deliberately not telling them about it

	Keep	Object	from	Object
The government had wanted	to keep	this information	from	the public.

☆ I *kept the news from him* for a while.

☆ He says it's alright, but I think he's *keeping something from me*.

COLLOCATION USE WITH KEEP

KEEP is also used to collocate with other words to form expressions such as:

- ☆ Keep control
- ☆ Keep a promise
- ☆ Keep calm
- ☆ Keep someone's place
- ☆ Keep an appointment
- ☆ Keep a secret
- ☆ Keep the change.

Topic 2

You indicated in the survey that you go to a gym for a workout. How often and when do you go to the gym? What kind of activities do you usually do there? Tell me the activities from the beginning to end.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Frequency of visit
Body	Aim/Purpose
	Routine in the gym
	Type of Exercise
	Benefits derived
Conclusion	Feelings after the visit

I usually go to the gym three times a week. Since I don't have a personal trainer, I just work out on my own for about two to three hours. I usually start my routine doing some stretching first to avoid any **mishaps**. Then I'll do my **cardio** exercises by *power walking* on a **treadmill**. After half an hour, I would *speed up* and run until I sweat. After that, I would sit down for a while to *recharge my batteries*. Then I go back and spend another thirty minutes or more on a **stationary** bicycle. As I am aiming for a flat stomach, I *wrap up* my work out with several kinds of **crunches**. When I'm finally done, I go take a shower and **head** home.

Vocabulary:

Mishap	an unpredictable outcome that is unfortunate
Cardio	relating to the heart
Treadmill	a piece of exercise equipment with a flat moving surface that you walk or run on while staying in the same place
Sweat	liquid that forms on your skin when you are hot
Stationary	not moving
Crunch	a kind of abdominal exercise
Head	to go in a particular direction

Idioms and Expressions:

Power walking	a form of exercise in which you walk very quickly
Speed up	to move or happen faster
Recharge my batteries	to have a period of rest and relaxation so that you feel energetic again
Wrap up	to finish something

Useful Expressions

➤ I usually start my routine doing some stretching first to avoid any **mishaps**.

❖ **Mishap:** an unpredictable outcome that is unfortunate

☆ The cause of the *mishap* is under investigation.

☆ In the event of a theft or a *mishap*, our insurance company usually cover the expenses.

☆ One of the problems that are common in cities is the *mishap* that involves kids falling out of the windows.

➤ After half an hour, I would **speed up** and run until I sweat.

❖ **Speed up:** to move or happen faster

☆ I think you need to *speed up* a bit. We're going to be late.

☆ The economy shows signs of *speeding up*.

☆ The tape *speeded up* towards the end.

➤ After that, I would sit down for a while to **recharge my batteries**.

❖ **Recharge my batteries:** to have a period of rest and relaxation sothat you feel energetic again

☆ She needs to take a break to *recharge her batteries*.

☆ The boss gave you a day off to *recharge your batteries*.

☆ I need a place where I can *recharge my batteries*.

➤ Then I spend another thirty minutes or more on a **stationary** bicycle.

❖ **Stationary:** not moving

☆ The traffic got slower and slower until it was *stationary*.

☆ The rate of inflation has been *stationary* for several months.

➤ I **wrap up** my work out with several kinds of crunches.

❖ **Wrap up:** to finish something

☆ We ought to *wrap up* this meeting and get back to work.

☆ Our basketball team *wrapped up* the season with a second place finish.

- When I'm finally done, I go take a shower and **head** home.
- ❖ **Head:** to go in a particular direction

- ☆ Where are you *headed*?
- ☆ She *headed* towards the library.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What does the gym that you usually go to look like? Where is it? What kinds of exercise equipment are there? Please give a detailed description.
- 2) I'd like to give you a situation and ask you to act it out. You're interested in going to a gym near your house. Call the gym and ask three or four questions on how you can register and use their facilities.

Grammar Pointer

When talking sports and activities, some students still confuse the verb **do** with other verbs such as **go** and **play**. In this lesson, you will find out how to know which one to use with each sport.

Do

Do is used for a recreational activity or a non-team sport that does not use a ball:

- ☆ I'll *do* my cardio exercises.
- Cardio exercises are not competitive.
- ☆ I heard that you *do* karate.
- Karate is a non-team activity.
- ☆ I *do* crossword puzzles in my free time.
- Crossword puzzles are not competitive.

Go

Go is used with activities that end **-ing**. We **go** somewhere to do something:

- ☆ I'm *going* fishing on Sunday.
- ☆ Are you *going* skiing this winter?
- ☆ She said she was *going* swimming.

Play

Play is used with ball sports or competitive games where we play against another person.

- ☆ How often do you *play* tennis?
- Tennis is a ball sport.
- ☆ I *play* poker with my friends on Friday night.
- Poker is a competitive game. We play to win.
- ☆ I don't like playing computer games.
- Again, computer games are competitive so we use **play**.

Play is also used with instruments.

- ☆ My brother taught me how to *play* the guitar.
- ☆ I can also *play* the saxophone.
- ☆ Do you know how to *play* the tambourine?

Aside from sports and other activities, DO is also used to collocate with other words to form expressions such as:

Do one's best	Do an experiment	Do an operation on someone	Do the shopping	Do (some) work/homework/housework
Do business	Do a favor	Do research	Do the dishes	

Topic 3

Have you ever had a health problem? What caused your health to deteriorate? What were the symptoms of your illness? How did you overcome it?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Specify health problem if any
Body	Cause
	Signs and Symptoms
	Ways undertaken to address the problem
Conclusion	Realization from the experience

Yes. I have **moderate** emphysema. It was something I **acquired** after I became a *heavy smoker*, which caused my health to **deteriorate**. **Chronic** cough and troubled breathing were the main **symptoms**. At first, I just *turned a blind eye* to the symptoms. It was only after my close friend told me about how his father died of lung cancer that I realized that I may be really sick too. It really scared me, so I decided to see a doctor *at once*. After some tests and examinations, the doctor said I don't have lung cancer, but I have emphysema instead. **Regrettably**, it doesn't have a cure, so I quit smoking to *keep it from getting worse*. However, I receive treatment that makes me more comfortable. After this experience, I **vowed** to change my lifestyle **for the better**.

Vocabulary:

Moderate	neither very great nor very small in amount, size, strength, or degree
Emphysema	a condition in which the small bags in the lungs become filled with too much air, causing breathing difficulties and heart problems
Acquire	to get something
Deteriorate	to become worse
Chronic	(especially of a disease or something bad) continuing for a long time
Symptom	a sign that someone has an illness
Regrettably	used for saying that you are sad or sorry about something
Vow	to make a determined decision or promise to do something

Idioms and Expressions:

Turn a blind eye	to pretend you do not notice something, because you should do something about it but you do not want to
At once	immediately; instantly
For the better	in the way of improvement; so as to produce better results or improvement

Useful Expressions

- It was something I acquired after I became a **heavy smoker**, which caused my health to deteriorate.
- ❖ **Heavy smoker:** someone who smokes a lot

☆ A *heavy smoker* is more likely to experience the dangers of cigarette smoking.

☆ Reports said that the number of *heavy smokers* declined.

Other related expressions:

- ❖ **Chain smoker:** someone who smokes one cigarette immediately after another
- ❖ **Moderate Smoker:** smokes between 1-2 packs per day
- ❖ **Light Smoker:** smokes 1/2 to 1 pack per day
- ❖ **Casual Smoker:** smokes only to socialize with friends

- **Chronic** cough and troubled breathing were the main symptoms.
- ❖ **Chronic:** (especially of a disease or something bad) continuing for a longtime

☆ His drinking has led to *chronic* cirrhosis of the liver.

☆ I'm suffering from *chronic* back pain.

Other related expressions:

- ❖ **Acute:** quick to become severe/bad

☆ We knew the baby was coming right away because the woman's labor pains were *acute*.

- ❖ **Benign:** not harmful (not cancerous)

☆ We're hoping that the tests will show that the lump in your breast is *benign*.

- ❖ **Terminal:** cannot be cured and will cause someone to die, usually slowly

☆ She has *terminal* cancer.

- It really scared me, so I decided to see a doctor **at once**.

- ❖ **At once:** immediately; instantly

☆ *Leave the room at once.*

☆ Now, go upstairs *at once* and clean your room!

☆ When I saw him I recognized him *at once*.

- **Regrettably**, it doesn't have a cure, so I quit smoking to **keep it from getting worse**.
 - ❖ **Regrettably**: used for saying that you are sad or sorry about something

☆ *Regrettably*, he will not be able to come.

☆ *Regrettably*, the book is not available.

- ❖ **Keep from doing something**: to manage to prevent yourself from doing something

☆ I couldn't *keep from smiling* when she told me what she'd done.

☆ These worries *kept her from sleeping* properly.

☆ The troops withheld fire to *keep the situation from escalating*.

- After this experience, I vowed to change my lifestyle **for the better**.
 - ❖ **For the better**: in the way of improvement; so as to produce better results or improvement

☆ Sometimes, people are so stubborn to change *for the better*.

☆ If it will happen, very little would change *for the better* in their personal lives.

☆ I think it is probably *for the better* if they don't know about it. The last thing they need now is another problem.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What precautions do you take to keep yourself healthy?
- 2) Who takes care of you when you are sick? What does that person do? Does he/she prepare any special food for you? What is it? Tell me in as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

It was *after my close friend told me about how his father died of lung cancer* that I realized that I may be really sick too.

As you noticed, the phrase *it was after...that* is used in the sentence above. It serves as a time expression that shows 'something happened no earlier than a particular time'. Also, notice that the sentence is in its passive structure.

Subject	Verb	Adverbial time clause	Dependent clause
It	was	after my close friend told me about how his father died of lung cancer	that I realized that I may be really sick too.

- ☆ It was *after my friend spoke with me* that I learned about the bad news.
- ☆ It was *after finishing his homework* that my younger brother got the chance to play.

BEFORE

- ❖ 'Before' means 'before that moment'.
- ☆ It was *just before the bell rang* that Amy finished the test.
- ☆ It was *just before she left the country* that she confessed the truth.

WHEN

- ❖ 'When' means 'at that moment', 'at that time', etc.
- ☆ It is *when things seem worst* that you must not quit.
- ☆ It was *when I his mother passed away* that he realized his mistake.

WHILE

- ❖ 'While' means 'during that time'. 'While' is usually used with the **past continuous** because the meaning of 'during that time' which indicates an action in progress.
- ☆ It was *while he was going home* that he remembered his mother's orders.
- ☆ It was *while I was on vacation* that the accident happened.

BY THE TIME

- ❖ 'By the time' expresses the idea that one event has been or will be completed before another. It is important to notice the use of the **past perfect** for past events and **future perfect** for future events in the main clause.

☆ It was *by the time we got to the airport* that she realized she didn't have her passport.

☆ It was *by the time we reached the restaurant* that the rain started to pour.

UNTIL

'Until' expresses 'up to that time'. We use either the **simple present** or **simple past**.

☆ It was *not until I heard him speak* that I recognized him.

☆ It was *not until this morning* that I have got the news.

Topic 4

Can you tell me about your recent experience to see a doctor or dentist? Please describe what usually happens when you visit your doctor or dentist.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement about the recent experience
Body	Purpose of visit
	Clinical activities done
	Medical advice acquired
Conclusion	Learning from the experience

I didn't really like seeing a doctor or dentist before, unless I was seriously ill. I believed that our body can be healed naturally. However, when I was *racked with pain* because of a terrible toothache last month, I had no other choice but to visit a dentist. I wasn't able to set an appointment as it was my first time to visit his clinic, so I had to wait for a while until I was called. When it's finally my turn, I explained what I was going through, and he took an X-ray of my teeth **afterwards**. He found out that some of them started to get **rotten** already. He did his best to treat them. Unfortunately, he had to **extract** one of my *wisdom teeth* for me to feel better. It was painful, but I knew it's *for my own good*. Moreover, he advised me to have dental examinations **periodically** to keep my teeth strong and healthy. *For quite a while*, I thought it is enough that we take care of ourselves, without asking for professional help. Now, I learned that it is a must to get proper pieces of advice from the experts before things *go from bad to worse*.

Vocabulary:

Rotten	damaged by decay; hence unsound and useless
Extract	remove, usually with some force or effort
Periodically	at regular time intervals

Idioms and Expressions:

Racked with pain	suffering from severe pain
Wisdom tooth	one of the four teeth at the back of the jaw that are the last to grow
Go from bad to worse	to progress from a bad situation to one that is worse

Useful Expressions

- I was **racked with pain** because of a terrible toothache last month.
❖ **Racked with pain:** suffering from severe pain

☆ My body was *racked with pain*, and I nearly passed out.
☆ I had to go home early yesterday because my head was *racked with pain*.
☆ The soldier was badly injured; he was *racked with pain*.

- He took an X-ray of my teeth **afterwards**.
❖ **Afterwards:** after an event or time that has already been mentioned

☆ We had tea, and *afterwards* we sat in the garden for a while.
☆ Let's go and see a film and *afterwards* we could go for a meal.

Other related expressions:

Get a dental cleaning
Get fillings put in
Have your wisdom teeth pulled?
Remove tartar buildup

- I knew it's **for my own good**.
❖ **For someone's own good:** for someone's benefit/advantage

☆ *For your own good*, you shouldn't ask too many questions.
☆ I'm only punishing him *for his own good*.

- **For quite a while**, I thought it is enough that we take care of ourselves.
❖ **Quite a while:** a long time

☆ I hadn't seen Rebecca in *quite a while*, but she hadn't changed much.
☆ I haven't talked with John for *quite a while*.

- It is **a must** to get proper pieces of advice from the experts before things **go from bad to worse**.
❖ **A Must:** something which is necessary

☆ Warm clothes are *a must* in the mountains.
☆ If you live in the countryside, a car is *a must*.

➤ I learned that it is a must to get proper pieces of advice from the experts before things **go from bad to worse**.

❖ **Go from bad to worse:** to progress from a bad situation to one that is worse

☆ Things *went from bad to worse* in a matter of days because of your carelessness.

☆ I'm afraid that things are *going from bad to worse* if we don't do anything.

☆ The troubles started when John lost his job last year, and things have *gone from bad to worse* ever since.

Grammar Pointer

Now, I learned that it is a must to **get** proper pieces of advice from the experts before things go from bad to worse.

In the sentence above, the verb *get* is used. This action word is one of the most common words in English, and it is used in many different ways. The meaning of *get* depends on what kind of word comes after it. With a direct object, like in our sample sentence, its basic meaning is 'to receive'.

Let's take a look at these different uses of the verb *get*:

➤ GET + NOUN / PRONOUN

When we use *get* with a noun or a pronoun as a direct object, it usually means 'obtain', 'acquire', 'receive' or 'fetch'.

Subject	Verb (get)	Direct Object	
I	got	the highest grade	in our English class.

☆ I **got my cat** from the pet shop in the city.

☆ Whenever I listen to loud music, I **get a headache**.

➤ GET + PREPOSITION/ ADVERB

* Used in many phrasal verbs

	Verb (get)	Preposition	Object
My dog jumped up on the couch and tried to	get	between	me and my boyfriend.

☆ When I eat dinner, he always *gets under the table* and begs for food.

☆ We *got to Paris* that evening.

☆ I was determined to *get at the truth*.

➤ GET + PAST PARTICIPLE

It's very common to put *get* and a past participle together in English to describe an action performed by another person or by yourself.

	Get	Participle
You've got five minutes	to get	dressed.

☆ My best friend is *getting married* in June.

☆ He *got stuck* in the mud.

* *Get + past participle* is also used to make **passive structures**, in the same way as *be + past participle*.

☆ My watch *got broken* while I was playing with the children.

☆ He *got caught* by the police driving at 120 mph.

➤ GET + OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

This structure can be used to mean ‘finish doing something’, ‘arrange for something to be done by somebody else’ or ‘experience something’.

	Get	Object	Past participle
It will take me another hour	to get	the washing	done.

☆ After you've *got the children dressed*, can you make the beds?

☆ I must *get my hair cut*.

☆ You ought to *get your watch repaired*.

➤ GET + INFINITIVE

With an infinitive, *get* can mean ‘manage’, ‘have an opportunity’ or ‘be allowed’.

	Get	Infinitive	Object	
You will	get	to speak	English	more easily as time goes by.

☆ We didn't *get to see her* – she was busy.

☆ When do I *get to see your new baby*?

☆ He's nice when you *get to know him*.

➤ GET + SOMEBODY/SOMETHING + TO -INFINITIVE

With an object, the infinitive structure means ‘make somebody / something do something’ or ‘persuade somebody / something to do something’. This structure implies that the other person did not want to do something, but we managed to convince them.

	Get	Object	Infinitive	
I can't	get	that child	to go	to bed

- ☆ *Get John to help us*, if you can.
- ☆ See if you can *get the car to start*.
- ☆ Finally we *got the mechanic to repair* the elevator.

Points of Discussion

- 1) How important is a nice smile in finding a good job or attracting a partner? What dental procedures are available to improve your teeth and smile? Are such procedures worth the cost?
- 2) I'd like to know about a hospital or a dental clinic that you often visit. Give as much detail as possible.
- 3) Do you have any memorable experience with a hospital or dental clinic when you were a child? If so, why was it so memorable? Tell me about it with as much detail as possible.

Topic 5

You have responded in our survey that you like to watch professional sports. Can you tell me about your favorite sports team and player?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Favorite sports team and player
Body	Reasons for liking them
	Details about the team and the player
	Actions done to show support
Conclusion	Anticipation of their future endeavors

I have been an **enthusiast** of professional sports for **quite** a long time now. Among all of the existing *far-famed* sports in Korea, baseball is my personal favorite. They say baseball is really a sport of emotion and devotion so I never fail to watch live games, especially **playoffs** of the Korea Professional Baseball League. I am a *self-proclaimed* number one fan of the Samsung Lions (SL) team. It's definitely *one of a kind* for it has won the Korean Series five times. Moreover, the team is the current Korean champion and also the *defending* Asia Series *champion*, becoming the first non-Japanese team to win the tournament since its **inception**. Of all players, I *hold* Lee Seung Yeop *in high regard*. He is known as Korea's „Lion King” and believed to be the greatest hitter in our country’s baseball history. At the age of 26, he turned out to be the youngest professional baseball player in the world to hit 300 home runs. Those **attainments** plus his **incomparable** skill make him truly an idol. In 2012 season, he will come back from Japan and play for SL once more. I think we are lucky that we can watch his games again.

Vocabulary:

Enthusiast	a person who is very interested in and involved with a particular subject or activity
Playoff	an extra game that is played to decide the winner after a game or series of games ends with an equal score
Inception	the beginning of something
Attainment	something that you have succeeded in doing or having
Incomparable	so good or great that nothing or no one else could achieve the same standard

Idioms and Expressions:

Far-famed	widely-known
Self-proclaimed	used for saying what a particular person, organization etc describes themselves as, even though other people might not agree
One of a kind	to be very unusual and special
Defending champion	the title given to an individual or team in sports or other type of competitions that holds the title of champion until someone beats them, or takes that title away from them
Hold someone or something in high regard	to think well of someone or something

Useful Expressions

- I have been an enthusiast of professional sports for **quite** a long time now.
 - ❖ **Quite**: very, but not extremely

- ☆ The food in the cafeteria is usually *quite* good.
- ☆ His hair is *quite* thin on top now.
- Among all of the existing **far-famed** sports in Korea, baseball is my personal favorite.
 - ❖ **Far-famed**: widely-known

- ☆ Mark's restaurant, *far-famed* for its traditional Indian cuisine, is located in the downtown area.
- ☆ My company is a *far-famed* automobile manufacturer in Korea.
- I am a **self-proclaimed** number one fan of the Samsung Lions (SL) team.
 - ❖ **Self-proclaimed**: used for saying what a particular person, organization etc describes themselves as, even though other people might not agree

- ☆ He's a *self-proclaimed* expert on national defense.
- ☆ She's a *self-proclaimed* genius.

- It's definitely **one of a kind** for it has won the Korean Series five times.

❖ **One of a kind:** to be very unusual and special

☆ My Aunt Mary is *one of a kind*. She's eighty, and not afraid of anything.

☆ He was an extraordinary person - absolutely *one of a kind*.

☆ Michael Jordan is a *one of a kind* basketball player. There will never be another player like him.

- I **hold** Lee Seung Yeop **in high regard**.

❖ **Hold someone or something in high regard:** to think well of someone or something

☆ All of us hold the vice president in high regard.

☆ We hold these policies in high regard.

- At the age of 26, he **turned out** to be the youngest professional baseball player in the world to hit 300 home runs.

❖ **Turn out:** to be known or discovered finally and surprisingly

☆ The tape *turned out* to contain vital information.

☆ It all *turned out* to be a mistake.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have you ever been to a stadium or gymnasium to watch a sports game? What game did you watch and who did you go with? Tell me about your experience with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Some famous athletes and entertainers earn millions of dollars every year. Do you think these people deserve such high salaries? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ I have been an enthusiast **of** professional sports for quite a long time now.
- ☆ Among all **of** the existing far-famed sports in Korea, baseball is my personal favorite.
- ☆ I am a self-proclaimed number one fan **of** the Samsung Lions (SL) team.
- ☆ **Of** all players, I hold Lee Seung Yeop in high regard.

You may have noticed that the sentences above, which are taken from the sample answer, have the preposition “**of**”. Actually, a lot of the sentences in the sample answer above use the word “**of**”.

We can use the preposition “**of**” in a lot of ways. Here they are:

➤ **Used to indicate possession, origin, or association:**

- ☆ I have been an enthusiast *of* professional sports for quite a long time now.
- ☆ I am a self-proclaimed number one fan *of* the Samsung Lions (SL) team.
- ☆ The house *of* my older sister needs repair.
- ☆ They say baseball is really a sport *of* emotion and devotion so I never fail to watch live games, especially playoffs **of** the Korea Professional Baseball League.

➤ **Used after words or phrases expressing quantities and numbers:**

- ☆ A pint *of* milk would be nice in my coffee.
- ☆ Father bought two kilos *of* sugar.
- ☆ He's got a lot *of* friends in London.
- ☆ At the age *of* 26, he turned out to be the youngest professional baseball player in the world to hit 300 home runs.

➤ **Constituted by, containing, or characterized by:**

- ☆ So young came from a family *of* singers in the mother side.
- ☆ He was stuck by a rod *of* iron.

➤ **Used to indicate separation, as in time or space:**

- ☆ They saw their car within a mile *of* the city.
- ☆ We saw the group KARA within fifteen minutes *of* the beginning *of* the concert!

To refer to someone or something that belongs to or is connected with someone, it is usual to use „s or s“ (NOT of) with short noun phrases.

Correct	Incorrect
Dad“s car	the car of Dad
a child“s bike	the bike of a child
my sister“s boyfriend	the boyfriend of my sister
the miner“s strike	the strike of the miners

When referring to one of several people or things belonging to or connected with someone, or when using “this” or “that,” use of + mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs

Correct	Incorrect
a friend of mine	a friend of me
a relation of ours	a relation of us
that car of yours	that car of you

Topic 6

You indicated that you enjoy playing soccer. How often do you play soccer and who do you play with and where? Why do you think soccer is one of the most popular sports in your country?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Personal views about playing soccer
Body	Frequency of playing soccer
	Soccer buddies
	Venue
Conclusion	Perception on soccer's popularity in your country

Soccer is one of the popular sport activities in Korea. It's widely known that soccer is a *sort of masculine* sport played by two teams, each having eleven players. This isn't just played professionally. In fact, many Korean men enjoy playing soccer with their friends or even with their children. Moreover, young adults and **adolescents** are also **delighted** by this sport. Personally, I started to like it back when I was in elementary school, but it was during my military service that I played and **relished** soccer a lot. Until now, I still play it with my friends on weekends. It is one of best ways for me to be physically fit. In playing soccer, it is **advisable**, but not required, to have top-quality equipment and a spacious field. Because of its popularity among all ages, it's **deemed** to be our national sport--**contending** with baseball. Moreover, we all see it as something that unified the people during the World Cup Game in 2002. Indeed, this sport has a great influence to players and **spectators**, not just physically but also emotionally.

Vocabulary:

Masculine	having qualities considered to be typical of men or of what men do
Adolescent	a young person who is developing into an adult
Delighted	very pleased
Relish	to enjoy an experience or the thought of something that is going to happen
Deem	to think of something in a particular way or as having a particular quality
Contend	to compete against someone
Spectator	someone who is watching an event or game

Useful Expressions

- It's widely known that soccer is a **sort** of masculine sport played by two teams.
❖ **Sort:** a group or class of people, things etc that have similar qualities or features

☆ What *sort* of shampoo do you use?

☆ We both like the same *sort* of music.

- It was during my military service that I played and **relished** soccer a lot.
❖ **Relish:** to enjoy an experience or the thought of something that is going to happen

☆ I always *relish* a challenge.

☆ I don't *relish* the thought of you walking home alone.

- Because of its popularity among all ages, it's **deemed** to be our national sport - **contending** with baseball.
❖ **Deem:** to think of something in a particular way or as having a particular quality

☆ These buildings are *deemed* to be of architectural importance and must be protected.

☆ They were *deemed* to be illegal immigrants.

❖ **Contend:** to compete against someone

☆ Three armed groups are *contending* for power.

☆ There are three world-class tennis players *contending* for this title.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I'd like to talk about some rules when you play soccer. How long do you normally play it? How many players are required to play? Give me a detailed description of them.
- 2) I'd like to know about an interesting or unforgettable experience you had while playing soccer. Tell me what happened. What made it so interesting or unforgettable? Give as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

Most English words used today were not originally English. These words were adapted from other language, such as Latin and Greek. It can be helpful to know some of these roots of English vocabulary. It may be possible to guess the meaning of an unknown word when one knows the meaning of its root. Knowing prefixes and suffixes can also help.

PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES

An English word can consist of three parts: the root, a prefix, and a suffix. The ROOT is the part of the word that contains the basic meaning, or definition of the word. The PREFIX is a word element placed in front of the root, which changes the word's meaning or makes a new word. A SUFFIX is a word element placed after the root, which changes the word's meaning as well as its function.

In this lesson, we are going to study the suffix **—Ab1E** and those prefixes showing incapability.

Origin	abilis
Meaning	used to express capacity, fitness to do that which can be handled or managed, suitable skills to accomplish something
Form	capable of being done, something which can be finished, etc.

Root word	+ able / ible Word formed (Adjective)	Meaning	Prefix	Antonym (using prefix in-, un- and dis-)
Advise	Advisable	capable or willing to be advised	in-	inadvisable
Agree	Agreeable	pleasing/ready to agree	dis-	disagreeable
Attain	Attainable	to achieve	un-	unattainable
Avail	Available	obtainable/Ready for use	un-	unavailable
Believe	Believable	can be trusted	un-	unbelievable
Change	Changeable	capable of change	un-	unchangeable
Control	Controllable	manageable	un-	uncontrollable
Credo	Credible	able to be trusted	in-	incredible

Cure	Curable	capable of being treated	in-	incurable
Describe	Describable	can be described/determinable	in-	indescribable
Notice	Noticeable	attracting notice or attention	un-	unnoticeable
Respect	Respectable	good/honest	dis-	disrespectable

☆ advisor , curer

☆ agreement, attainment

☆ availability : ex) able – ability, real – reality, electric - electricity

☆ belief, credit

, ☆ noticeably: ex) briefly, promptly, quickly, truly...

Topic 7

Could you explain a famous traditional sport or game in your country?
When do people play it or enjoy it? Tell me your opinion with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Famous traditional sport or game
Body	Different reasons why people engage in that game/ sport
	Outlook of people engaged in that game/ sport
Conclusion	Personal opinion about the game/sport

Among the numerous Korean traditional sports that have been modernized, Taekwondo is best known and **acknowledged** as our national sport for a long time. The **philosophy** behind Taekwondo's meaning is that the **practitioner** should be able to immediately stop an attacker with one **well-focused punch**, strike or kick to a **vital** area. **Undeniably**, it is the most **favorable** form of training as it provides a number of benefits. It is not only a form of self-defense but also a great way to lose weight and stay fit. In addition, it also keeps the mind **stimulated** since mental conditioning is its **core** concept. However, Taekwondo training is viewed a bit differently in Korea **compared to** western societies. For most, they **perceive** it as a form of education, not as a hobby or a leisure **pursuit**. It is something that Korean children often learn as part of their schooling, that Korean soldiers learn in the army, and something that adults only seem to continue if it is their profession. In spite of these varied views, I believe that Taekwondo is the best sports for all range of people.

Vocabulary:

Acknowledge	to accept, admit or recognize something, or the truth or existence of something
Philosophy	the attitude or set of ideas that guides the behavior of a person or organization
Practitioner	someone who does a particular activity
Well-focused	concentrating on a particular aim
Punch	a quick strong hit made with your fist
Vital	extremely important and necessary for something to succeed or exist
Undeniably	certainly true
Favorable	giving you an advantage or more chance of success
Stimulate	to encourage something to grow, develop or become active
Perceive	to come to an opinion about something, or have a belief about something
Core	the most important
Pursuit	an activity that you enjoy

Useful Expressions

- The philosophy behind Taekwondo's meaning is that the **practitioner** should be able to immediately stop an attacker with one well-focused punch, strike or kick to a vital area.

❖ **Practitioner:** someone who does a particular activity

☆ Elizabeth Quan is a London-based *practitioner* of traditional Chinese medicine.

☆ She was a medical *practitioner* before she entered politics.

❖ **Well-focused:** concentrating on a particular aim

☆ We need a *well-focused* approach to finally eliminate poverty.

☆ The actor's portrayal of his character is *well-focused* and convincing.

- **Undeniably**, it is the most **favorable** form of training as it provides a number of benefits.

❖ **Undeniably:** certainly true

☆ She is *undeniably* good at her job.

☆ She is *undeniably* the most gifted student in the class.

❖ **Favorable:** giving you an advantage or more chance of success

☆ They decided to delay the trip until conditions were more *favorable*.

☆ The response has been overwhelmingly *favorable*.

- In addition, it also keeps the mind stimulated since mental conditioning is its **core** concept.

❖ **Core:** the most important

☆ The final status negotiations would focus on the *core* issues of the peace process.

☆ We need to focus on our *core* activities.

- However, Taekwondo training is viewed a bit differently in Korea **compared to** western societies.

❖ **Compare to:** used for talking about the ways in which two things are different, or about the ways in which something has changed

☆ Davies' style of writing has been *compared to* Dickens'.

☆ *Compared to* some of the things she's said, this was polite.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Are there any sports unique to your country? How are they played? What is the best time to see them? Tell me about these sports in detail.
- 2) Do you think traditional sports in your country are forgotten? Why or why not? Support your answer with specific details and examples.

Grammar Pointer

In the previous chapters, we learned about coordinating conjunctions and subordinating conjunctions. In this lesson, we will study **correlative conjunctions**-- pairs of words that are used to link words together. The most important thing to remember when using correlative conjunctions is that the words, phrases, or clauses that are put together must be the same type. That means that nouns must be put together with other nouns, verbs with other verbs, adjectives with other adjectives, and so on.

Frequently Used Correlative Conjunctions	
both ... and	whether ... or
either ... or	not only ... but also
neither ... nor	as ... as

It is **not only** a form of self-defense **but also** a great way to lose weight and stay fit.

In the sentence above, the noun phrases “a form of self defense” and “a great way” are joined by the conjunctions *not only...but also*.

Other examples:

Both...and	Both the minister and his colleagues visited the site. <i>The correlative conjunction in this sentence is "both ... and." This correlative conjunction links together two words of the same type. In this case, the types of words are the nouns, minister and colleagues.</i>
Either ... or	I will either go for a walk or read a book. <i>The correlative conjunction in this sentence is "either ... or." This conjunction links two phrases: go for a walk and read a book.</i>
neither ... nor	She is neither intelligent nor beautiful. <i>The correlative conjunction in this sentence is "neither ... nor." This conjunction links two adjectives.</i>
whether ... or	Whether the cat or the dogs stay at home hasn't been decided. <i>The correlative conjunction in this sentence is "whether...or." This conjunction links two nouns.</i>
Not only... but also	Not only in the morning but also in the afternoon, I nap. <i>The correlative conjunction in this sentence is "not only...but also." This conjunction links two phrases.</i>

Whether . . . or is somewhat different from the other correlative conjunctions. Note that in the preceding sentence “Whether the dogs or the cat stays home” is a noun clause that is the subject for the verb “hasn’t been decided.” Also, a shortened form with “not” is often used with negatives.

- ☆ **Whether** I work **or** I don’t work, I still want to get paid.
- ☆ **Whether** I work **or** not, I still want to get paid.

NOTE: in both of the preceding sentences, the **whether . . . or** clause is a subordinating clause, not independent.

IMPORTANT!

SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

- Since **both . . . and** adds ideas together, a plural verb is necessary when subjects are joined.
☆ **Both** the dog **and** the cat **are** very friendly.
- When **either . . . or**, **neither . . . nor**, **not only . . . but also**, and **whether . . . or** join subjects, the verb matches the second subject only.
☆ **Either** the TV **or** the neighbors **are** making a lot of noise.
☆ **Neither** the girls **nor** Stephen **is** in the house.
☆ **Not only** Lisa’s parents **but also** Lisa **is** coming for a visit.
☆ **Whether** the cat **or** the dogs **stay** at home hasn’t been decided.

PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT

- If you connect two antecedents with a correlative conjunction, the second one must agree with the pronoun that follows.
 - ☆ **Neither** Sam **nor** the *cousins* expressed *their* disappointment when blind Aunt Sophie set down the plate of burnt hamburgers.
 - ☆ **Neither** the cousins **nor** **Sam** expressed *her* disappointment when blind Aunt Sophie set down the plate of burnt hamburgers.

PARALLEL STRUCTURE

- Be sure that you have equal grammatical units after both parts of the conjunction.
 - ☆ The woman is **not only** friendly **but also** a *teacher*.

*This is not correct because friendly is an adjective and teacher is a noun. A correlative conjunction **must** link similar types of words.*
 - ☆ John doesn't know **whether** to *run or walking* in order to warm up.

*This is not correct because, even though both are verbs, "to run" is the infinitive form and "walking" is the present participle. A correlative conjunction **must** link similar types of words.*

INVERSION

- When **neither...nor** and **not only...but also** are used to join independent clauses, the subject and verb after the negative parts of the paired conjunctions must be reversed, often requiring the addition of a form of DO (do, does, did).
 - ☆ **Neither** do I want to study, **nor** do I want to work.

Both neither and nor include the negative "not," so the subjects and verbs in both clauses have to be reversed.
 - ☆ **Not only** does Harry purr a lot, **but also** he sleeps 20 hours a day.

Only not only includes the negative "not," so only the subject and verb in the first clause need to be reversed.

DOUBLE NEGATIVES

- **Neither...nor** means "not one and not the other," so it's important to avoid adding "not" in the sentence, or this will result in a double negative. However, with **not only...but also**, it's correct to maintain "not."
 - ☆ **Neither** do I like Mark, **nor** do I want to see him.
 - ☆ **Not only** do I not like Mark, **but also** I do not want to see him.

Topic 8

I would like to know how you learned how to swim. How old were you when you first learned how to swim? Where did you learn it and who taught you?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	When and how you learned how to swim
Body	Reasons
	Where and who taught you
	Details about the learning experience
Conclusion	Influence of swimming

I was first introduced to swimming when I was six years old, as advised by a **pediatrician**. According to her, if I learn how to swim *at an early age*, I will grow as a physically and mentally fit individual. Having this in mind, my mom enrolled me in one of the **reputable** swimming schools in Seoul. There were 14 other kids who were *signed up* in the same class where I belonged. Just like most of the youngsters there, I was initially scared to **plunge** myself into the water. Luckily, I had a **bubbly, well-disposed** and understanding instructor who helped on **awakening** my interest in swimming. After **quite some** time of **extensive** learning process and practice, all my efforts *paid off* when I finally learned to swim. *To top it all*, I was even chosen to participate in some swimming competitions in our city. Now that I'm already a grownup, I still go swimming twice a month to stay *in good shape*.

Vocabulary:

Pediatrician	a doctor who has special training in medical care for children
Reputable	having a good reputation and able to be trusted
Plunge	to fall quickly from a high position
Bubbly	lively; enthusiastic
Well-disposed	tending to be friendly, helpful, or interested
Awakening	the moment when you first realize or experience something
Extensive	having a great range
Pay off	to result to something good

Idioms and Expressions:

To top it all	the best thing is
In good shape	in good condition; fit and healthy

Useful Expressions

➤ According to her, if I learn how to swim **at an early age**, I will grow as a physically and mentally fit individual.

❖ At an early age: when he/she was young

☆ Personality takes shape *at an early age*.

☆ Is it okay to secure a life insurance *at an early age*?

☆ According to experts, marriage *at an early age* is seriously harmful to girls.

➤ After **quite some** time of extensive learning process and practice, all my efforts **paid off** when I finally learned to swim.

❖ **Quite some:** used before a noun for emphasizing that something is unusual or interesting

☆ He's been renting the house for *quite some time*.

☆ They have to walk home and it's *quite some distance*.

❖ **Pay off:** to result to something good

☆ All her hard work *paid off* in the end, and she was finally promoted.

☆ All those weeks of studying will *pay off* when you take the exam.

➤ **To top it all**, I was even chosen to participate in some swimming competitions in our city.

❖ **To top it all:** in addition to everything else that was said or done

☆ Students get to meet the world's top scientists and researchers, and *to top it all*, the conference is free.

☆ *To top it all*, she left me with huge debts.

➤ I still go swimming twice a month to stay **in good shape**.

❖ **In good shape:** in good condition; fit and healthy

☆ This car isn't *in good shape*. I'd like to have one that's in better condition.

☆ Jack has finally recovered from his illness. He's now back *in good shape*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) I am going to a swimming pool. What should I bring? Tell me about the things I have to prepare and what I should keep in mind before I go swimming.
- 2) Tell me about a memorable swimming experience you had. When was it, and where did it take place? What happened? Tell me all the things that made the experience memorable.
- 3) What are the safety precautions that you take when you go swimming?

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ I will grow *as* a physically and mentally fit individual.
☆ Just *like* most of the youngsters there, I was initially scared to plunge myself into the water.

Notice that in the two sentences above, we are expressing that one thing is like another different thing. In the first sentence, “I” is compared to “a physically and mentally fit individual.” In the second sentence, “I” is compared to “most of the youngsters.” To show the similarity, we use “as” and “like.”

Since they are both used to compare actions or situations, *as* and *like* are often confused. There are, however, important differences.

AS AND LIKE AS PREPOSITIONS

- **As** refers to something or someone's appearance or function.
- ❖ **Structure:** As + Noun
- ☆ I worked *as a shop assistant* for 2 years when I was a student.
☆ I'm going to the fancy dress party *as Superman*.
☆ He used his shoe *as a hammer* to hang the picture up.

In comparisons, the structure „**as adjective as**“ is often used.

- ☆ His skin was *as cold as ice*.
☆ It felt *as hard as rock*.
- **Like** has the meaning 'similar to' and is used when comparing things.
- ❖ **Structure:** Like + Noun

- ☆ I've been working *like* a dog.
- ☆ She looks a bit *like* her brother.
- ☆ Just *like* you, I'm always a bit wary of large dogs.

Using “like” to denote negative meanings

You have to be careful in placing the word “like”. Its order can change the meaning of a sentence. Note the word order in the following sentences:

- ☆ I don't sing, *like* So Young. (So Young sings, but I don't.)
- ☆ *Like* So Young, I don't sing. (So Young doesn't sing; neither do I.)
- ☆ So Young's not Japanese, *like* Miku. (Miku is Japanese, but So Young's not.)
- ☆ *Like* Miku, So Young's not Japanese. (Miku is not Japanese, nor is So Young.)

AS AND LIKE AS CONJUNCTIONS

- As means 'in the same way that'.
- ❖ **Structure:** As + Subject + Verb

- ☆ Nobody sings *as* she does.
- ☆ The first ten days of July were very wet this year, *as* they were last year and the year before.

- In informal English, **like** is used in the same way. This is particularly common in American English.
 - ☆ We play football *like* champions do.
 - ☆ Nobody loves you *like* I do!

AS VS. LIKE

Be careful, in similar sentences that use LIKE and AS, the meanings of each sentence are very different.

- ☆ *As* your boss, I must warn you to be careful. (I am your boss.)
- ☆ *Like* your boss, I must warn you to be careful. (I am not your boss, but he/she and I have similar attitudes.)

Chapter

7

Vacation & Trips

- Topic 1. Overseas Trip
- Topic 2. Favorite Trip
- Topic 3. Most Memorable Experience during Vacation
- Topic 4. Difficult Situation Encountered during Trip
- Topic 5. Camping
- Topic 6. Domestic Business Trip
- Topic 7. Role Play: Booking a Hotel

Topic 1

Have you ever traveled overseas? If so, please describe one of the countries or cities that you have visited. If not, pick a foreign country or city that you'd like to visit, and explain why you'd like to go there.

Development of Ideas		
Introduction	Response to the main question (Yes/No)	
Body	If yes,	If no,
	Country/ City visited	Preferred country/city
	Purpose of the visit	Reason for choosing the country/city
	Impression	Plan/s for the future trip
	Memorable experience/s	
Conclusion	Feelings towards overseas trips	

Yes, I have. I often go to Shenzhen in China. One of our *branch offices* is there and I need to *iron out* several problems regarding our factory's *output level*. Shenzhen is a modern **metropolis**. Just like Seoul, the city center is **dominated** with **skyscrapers** and *high-rise* apartment blocks. I feel it is growing at an **astronomical** rate because in each of my visit, a new high rise has *sprung up*. However, since it is **ultra** modern, Shenzhen seems to lack a traditional appeal that characterizes most cities in China. What I like most about it, though, is that everything is a **steal**. My Chinese colleague once accompanied me to Dongmen, the city's shopping district. It's a mixture of small stores and **upmarket chains**, but the **latter** also offers **substantial** discounts. I bought a bag for my wife which was *marked down* from \$650 to \$400. It was the best deal I ever had. Truly, going on overseas trips brings so much fun and excitement.

Vocabulary:

Dominate	to be larger and more noticeable than anything else in a place
Skyscraper	a very tall modern city building
Astronomical	describes an amount which is extremely large
Ultra	extreme or extremely
Steal	a product that has a very low price, or a price that is much lower than the original cost
Upmarket	describes goods and products that are of very high quality and intended to be bought by people who are quite rich
Chain	(chain store) a group of shops which belong to a single company, having the same appearance and selling similar goods
Latter	the second of two people, things or groups previously mentioned
Substantial	large in size, value or importance

Idioms and Expressions:

Iron out	to remove problems or find solutions
Output level	quantity of final items produced
High-rise	a tall modern building with a lot of floors
Spring up	to appear or to be produced suddenly and quickly
Mark down	to reduce the price of something, usually in order to encourage people to buy it

Useful Expressions

- One of our **branch offices** is there and I need to **iron out** several problems regarding our factory's output level.
- **Branch office:** an office of a firm which is located somewhere other than the firm's main office location

- ☆ Our first *branch office* is located in Busan.
- ☆ Our company has 98 *branch offices* worldwide.

Other related expressions:

- **Subsidiary:** a company that is owned or controlled by another larger company
- **Parent company:** a company that controls a smaller company or organization
- **Iron out:** to remove problems or find solutions

- ☆ We're still trying to *iron out* some problems with the computer system.
- ☆ It's only a little problem. I can *iron it out* very quickly.

- Shenzhen is a modern **metropolis**.
- ❖ **Metropolis:** a very large city, often the most important city in a large area or country

- ☆ Seoul is the largest *metropolis* of South Korea.
- ☆ Soon afterwards he left to begin his career in the *metropolis*.

Other related expressions:

- ❖ **Megalopolis:** a large city, or an area that contains a lot of large cities
- ❖ **Megacity:** a very large city that has a population of more than 10 million people

- I feel it is growing at an astronomical rate because in each of my visit, a new high rise has **sprung up**.
 - ❖ **Spring up:** to appear or to be produced suddenly and quickly

- ☆ New Internet companies were *springing up* every day.
- ☆ We knew it was really spring when all the flowers *sprang up*.

- What I like most about it, though, is that everything is a **steal**.
 - ❖ **Steal:** a product that has a very low price, or a price that is much lower than the original cost

- ☆ At that price, those shoes are a *steal*.
- ☆ We had an excellent seafood dish that is a *steal* at \$8.25.

- I bought a bag for my wife which was **marked down** from \$650 to \$400.
 - ❖ **Mark down:** to reduce the price of something, usually in order to encourage people to buy it

- ☆ Low consumer demand has forced us to *mark down* a wide range of goods, sometimes **by** as much as 30%.
- ☆ They've *marked down* the shoes to 20,000 won for this week only.

Points of Discussion

- 1) When you travel abroad, where do you usually stay? Why do you choose this kind of accommodation among the many others? What facilities or services do they offer? What do you like about it?
- 2) You are going on a trip abroad for a vacation. Call a travel agency and ask three to four questions about their tour package.
- 3) How do you prepare when you go on a trip abroad? What are the things that you always bring with you on a trip abroad?

Grammar Pointer

☆ I've only spoken with Paul over the phone, but he **seems** nice.

In the sentence above, can you say that you are certain that Paul is nice? Because of the word “seem,” we can't be certain of that, but it appears to be true that he's a nice person. This is the impression that we have of Paul. To make someone appear to be something or appear to have a particular quality, we use **SEEM**.

SEEM + ADJECTIVE

Seem is a linking verb. We can use it to “link” a subject to a description.

- ☆ You *seem bored*.
- ☆ You *seem eager* to begin.
- ☆ You *seem easy* to get along with.

SEEM + INFINITIVE

Seem can also be followed by the infinitive. In this case, “seem” means to appear to have a quality or be in some condition, or to appear to be true.

Since it is ultra modern, Shenzhen *seems to lack* a traditional appeal that characterizes most cities in China.

It appears to be true that Shenzhen lacks a traditional appeal.

Other examples:

- ☆ You don't *seem to mind* that your boss didn't give you a raise. Aren't you mad?
- ☆ You *seem to have annoyed* him.

Other Uses of Seem

SEEM + THAT CLAUSE

We can **SEEM** with *that* clause. The expression “it seems that” is used to describe a situation or condition that appears to exist or be true.

Examples:

- ☆ It *seems that many people ask Mike for his advice*. He's very knowledgeable, and he's always ready to help.
- ☆ It *seems that my co-worker says no every time someone asks her for help*.

SEEM + LIKE/AS IF + NOUN CLAUSE

These structures are used to describe a situation or condition that appears to exist or be true.

Note: *Like* is more conversational. In fact, some sources see this use of “like” as nonstandard English, but it is very common especially in conversation.

Examples:

☆ It **seems like** Jane can do no wrong. Everyone loves her but you. It seems like you have something against her.

In other words:

☆ It **seems as if** Jane can do no wrong. Everyone loves her but you. You seem as if you have something against her.

There is no difference in meaning; however, this variation is more formal. “As if” is more standard than “like.”

Also possible:

It **seems that** Jane can do no wrong. Everyone loves her but you. You seem to have something against her.

This variation has a slight meaning difference. It suggests that there is more certainty or greater likelihood that the statement is true.

SEEM + LIKE + NOUN PHRASE

We use this to describe how someone or something gives the appearance or impression of having a certain quality. (There is the possibility that it is the wrong impression.)

Example:

☆ Thank you for your advice. That *seems like* a good idea.

It is also used to describe how a situation is similar to another time or place.

Alice: When did you meet Ken?

Alex: Back in high school.

Alice: Wow! That long ago?

Alex: Yeah. But it *seems like* yesterday.

Other examples:

☆ Joan and I were college roommates many years ago. Now, we work together and *it seems like the old times*.

Topic 2

Could you describe one of your favorite trips? Where did you go and where did you stay? Why is this particular trip so memorable? Tell me as many as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement on one of the favorite trips
Body	Destination
	Place where the speaker stayed
	Factors that made the trip memorable
Conclusion	Thought about the trip/ Future plans

I love Jeju Island. I've been there thrice for **workshops** and seminars, but the most recent one was the best trip I had in that place. During that time, I had time to bond with my parents and my sister. We stayed in a condominium overlooking the sea. It was definitely memorable because we did not travel on a group tour, so we had the freedom to go wherever we want. It gave me the excitement that I didn't have in my previous trips in Jeju. We *feasted our eyes on* the beautiful **scenery** that the island offers. We drove along the coast and went horseback riding. However, what I looked forward to the most was our submarine tour. It was my first time underwater, and we went as deep as 40 meters. The corals and the many types of fish looked splendid. Our summer vacation was *beyond awesome*, so we **intend** to visit there again.

Vocabulary:

Workshop	a meeting of people to discuss and/or perform practical work in a subject or activity
Overlook	to provide a view of, especially from above
Scenery	natural things such as trees, hills, and lakes that you can see in a particular place
Intend	to have a plan in your mind to do something
Diverse	Varied or different

Idioms and Expressions:

Feasted someone's eyes on | to look at someone or something with a lot of pleasure

Useful Expressions

- We stayed in a condominium **overlooking** the sea.
❖ **Overlook:** to provide a view of, especially from above

☆ The rooms *overlooked* the garden.
☆ Our hotel *overlooked* the Temple of Luxor and the river.

Other usage:

- ❖ **Overlook:** to fail to notice or consider something
☆ I think there is one key fact that you have *overlooked*.
❖ **Overlook:** to forgive or pretend not to notice something
☆ I'm prepared to *overlook* his behavior this time.

- We **feasted our eyes on** the beautiful scenery that the island offers.
❖ **Feasted someone's eyes on:** to look at someone or something with a lot of pleasure

☆ Let the fresh air blow upon us while we *feast our eyes on* the splendid sunrise.
☆ She spent her whole day *feasting her eyes on* the wonderful paintings in the museum.
☆ He could not *feast his eyes* enough upon the gorgeous woman who was before him.

- Our summer vacation was **beyond awesome**, so we **intend** to visit there again.
❖ **Beyond awesome:** extremely great

☆ Ken and Mark are *beyond awesome* to hang out with.
☆ The sunset was really *beyond awesome*.
❖ **Intend:** to have a plan in your mind to do something

☆ They *intend* to go despite their father's disapproval.
☆ The boss *intend* to go out to eat for a few hours, so please prepare by then.
☆ The company *intends* to offer better quality products at the market.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What are the popular tourist destinations in your country? Have you been to any of them? Which would you recommend if you could only recommend one? Why?
- 2) Tell me about your dream vacation. What do you want to do? Explain your itinerary.

Grammar Pointer

Verbs in English can be classified into two categories: *stative* verbs and *dynamic* verbs. **Dynamic verbs** (sometimes referred to as "action verbs") usually describe actions we can take, or things that happen; **stative verbs** usually refer to a state or condition which is not changing or likely to change. The difference is important, because stative verbs cannot normally be used in the continuous (BE + ING) forms.

DYNAMIC VERBS

Activity	He <i>plays</i> soccer every Saturday. He <i>is playing</i> soccer now.
Process	The snow <i>melts</i> every spring. The snow <i>is melting</i> right now.

Dynamic verbs, as you can see from the table above, can be used in the simple and perfect forms (*plays*, *played*, *has played*, *had played*) as well as the continuous or progressive forms (*is playing*, *was playing*, *has been playing*, *had been playing*).

STATIVE VERBS

Stative verbs usually refer to a state or condition which is quite static or unchanging.

You can group verbs that show a state in the following ways:

Verbs that show thought	believe, doubt, guess, imagine, know, think, understand
Verbs that show possession	have, own, want, contain, include etc.
Verbs that show senses	feel, hear, see, smell etc.
Verbs that show emotion	love, hate, want, wish, need, prefer etc.

I love Jeju Island.

In this sentence I am not doing anything. I'm feeling something. *Love* is a stative verb.

Other examples:

- ☆ I *like* vanilla ice cream.
- ☆ She *knows* a lot of Spanish words.
- ☆ He *impressed* me with his story.
- ☆ This Korean cookbook *includes* a recipe for bulgogi.

NOTE: We *cannot* use stative verbs in the continuous (progressive) forms.

✗ I'm *owning* this car.

✓ I **own** this car.

Own is a state, not an action, so it is always in the simple form.

However, some **stative verbs** are occasionally used in the **progressive form** when they describe something with a **definite beginning** and **end**.

- ☆ What **are** you **looking** at? (action)

Other examples:

	Stative	Dynamic
Be is usually a stative verb, but when it is used in the continuous it means ' <i>behaving</i> ' or ' <i>acting</i> '.	He's funny. <i>It's part of his personality.</i>	He's being funny. <i>only now, not usually</i>
Have	I have a Ferrari car. <i>own, possession</i>	They're having a good time. <i>part of an expression</i>
See	I can see you have a big garden. <i>sense</i>	I'm seeing So Young on Saturday. <i>meet</i>
Taste	This Indian dish tastes good! <i>has a certain taste, sense</i>	The chef is tasting the soup. <i>the action of tasting</i>
Think	She thinks that boy is handsome. <i>have an opinion</i>	What are you thinking about? I'm thinking about that boy. <i>consider, have in my head</i>

Topic 3

Tell me if you had a memorable experience during your vacation? When and where did it happen? Was it funny or embarrassing and how did everything turn out in the end? Please describe it with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Brief description about the memorable experience
Body	When it happened
	Location
	Kind of experience (funny or embarrassing)
	How everything turned out in the end
Conclusion	Learning from the experience

Facilities in public transportation are made in order to make traveling more comfortable for everyone. One of these facilities is the seat for elderly in subways. Koreans always reserve them for the older people when they get into the subway. However, on my first visit to Korea, I was not aware of this. It happened on my second day when I had to travel from Bundang to Seoul using the subway. My friend and I agreed to meet at the Seoul Station at 9:00 am. It was definitely the rush hour. People were *queueing up* to get into the subway and I joined them. When I got in, I noticed that there was an empty seat at the end of the train. No one was occupying it so I decided to walk to that spot to take it throughout my ride. When I sat down, people started whispering while staring at me. A young lady moved towards me and told me that the seat is reserved for the elderly or **disabled** persons. I felt embarrassed that I *wished the ground would swallow me up*. I instantly rose and apologized. I told the lady that it was my first time to visit Korea and to ride the subway as well. She smiled and said that it was fine and that I should remember not to sit on it if I ever rode the subway again.

Vocabulary:

Disabled | people collectively who are crippled or otherwise physically handicapped

Idioms and Expressions:

Queue up | to form or join a line of people or vehicles waiting to do something or go somewhere

Wish the ground wouldswallow me/you up | to wish that you could disappear because you feel very embarrassed

Useful Expressions

- I was so embarrassed that I **wished the ground would swallow me up.**
❖ **Wish the ground would swallow me/you up:** to wish that you could disappear because you feel very embarrassed

☆ Everyone in the room was staring at me, and I stood there *wishing the ground would swallow me up.*
☆ When I realized I was reading the wrong report during the meeting, I really *wished the ground would swallow me up.*

- It was definitely the **rush hour.**
❖ **Rush hour:** the times at the beginning and end of the working day when many people are traveling to and from work

☆ Buses and the subways are crowded during the *rush hours.*
☆ She left the office early so that she won't be caught by the *rush hour* traffic.
☆ The workers in the office decided to leave after the *rush hour.*

- People were **queueing up** to get into the subway.
❖ **Queue up:** line up; form a line

☆ The fans were *queueing up* to see their favorite idols.
☆ The women were *queueing up* to pay for their groceries.
☆ They decided to *queue up* for the auditions to the play.

- A young lady **moved towards** me and told me that the seat is reserved for the elderly or disabled persons
❖ **Move toward:** to move nearer to someone or something; approach

☆ As I *moved towards* our house, I became more excited to see my family after a long time.
☆ Jenny was frightened when she heard footsteps *moving towards* her.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What are the important factors that you consider when choosing your vacation place? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible?
- 2) Do you agree that before you go abroad, you need to be familiar with the tourist attractions in your own country? Why or why not? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

- ☆ One of these facilities is the **seat** for elderly in subways.
- ☆ When I got in, I noticed that there was an empty **seat** at the end of the train.
- ☆ When I **sat down**, people started whispering while staring at me.
- ☆ She smiled and said that it was fine and that I should remember not to **sit on** it if I ever rode the subway again.

In the sample answer, the words *seat*, *sit*, *sit down* and *sit on* are all used. As you noticed in the sentences above, these words are used differently. Let's discuss them further:

SEAT

- *Seat* generally means ' a place where you can sit, especially one in a vehicle or one from which you watch a performance, sports event etc'.
- ☆ We requested a window *seat* for the flight to Los Angeles.
- ☆ Sorry, there are no more available *seats*.
- ☆ We're a long way from the stage, but they were the *best seats* in my opinion.

The word *seat* can also have different meanings:

- **Seat: a position as an elected member of a government, or as a member of a group that makes official decisions**
 - ☆ Promotion would mean a *seat* on the board of directors.
 - ☆ The president is expected to keep his *seat*.
- **Seat: to have or provide seats for**
 - ☆ We can *seat* 300 in the auditorium.
 - ☆ The stadium *seats* 60,000.
- **Seat yourself/somebody (in/on/beside etc something): to sit down somewhere**
 - ☆ She *seated* herself at her desk.
 - ☆ The usher *seated* me in the back row.

SIT DOWN VS. SIT

- We usually use *sit down* rather than *sit* to say that **someone moves into a sitting position.**
- ☆ Everyone *sat down* to listen.
- ☆ It was good to be *sitting down* eating dinner with my family.
- ☆ *Sit down* and take a rest, John. You look exhausted.

- We use *sit* when we mention **where someone sits down, and when we do something while sitting.**

- ☆ Bryan *sat* next to his girlfriend.
- ☆ Where shall we *sit*?
- ☆ We used to *sit and listen to her for hours.*

To tell someone to sit down, we say 'Sit down', 'Have a seat', or, in very formal situations, 'Please be seated'. We usually say 'Sit!' to a dog.

SIT ON

- We *sit on* flat things such as bench, the floor, the grass, etc. Moreover, we *sit on* a chair if it's **flat and simple.**
- ☆ I *sat on* the shore and looked at the sea.
- ☆ There are rare times that I just want to *sit on* a bench and reminisce all day.
- ☆ He was *sitting cross-legged on* the floor.

- To *sit on* can also mean '**to suppress or repress**' or '**to postpone action or resolution**':
- ☆ The head investigator, who happened to be the cousin of the suspect, *sat on* the evidence to protect the latter.

SIT IN

- On the other hand, we *sit in* a room, a corner, a tree, or a seat in a vehicle. Furthermore, we *sit in* a chair if it's **soft and comfortable.**
- ☆ I saw a timid little girl *sitting in* a corner.
- ☆ Jenny loves to *sit in* a chair by the fire, especially during winter.
- ☆ I'm so stressed. I just want to *sit in* a cozy couch and unwind.

- To *sit in* can also mean 'to act as a substitute':
- ☆ Dan *sat in* for the sick news anchor.

Topic 4

Do you have any experience wherein you lost something or met a difficult situation during your trip? How did you solve it? Describe the situation with as much detail.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement about the difficult situation encountered (if any)
Body	Details about the difficult situation
	Effects of the situation to the speaker and the trip
Conclusion	Measures done to solve the problem Learning from the experience

Though it happened many years ago, I can still **vividly** remember my worst baggage handling experience in a flight from Incheon to Los Angeles. We had a really good experience during the flight because the attendants were so **accommodating** and the facilities were convenient, but the mood changed when we reached our destination. I almost *went ballistic* when I learned my luggage was *nowhere in sight*. Since the travel and tours company took care of our entire trip in the United States, our tour head handled the complaint filed to the airline. He **assured** me that I'll *get it back* immediately, but I still felt bad. I didn't enjoy the first days of the tour because of what happened. Luckily, I got back my luggage *safe and sound* three days after we reported its loss. With that unforgettable experience, I learned that unexpected things really happen on trips so we have to secure everything and be **coolheaded** when things *go wrong*.

Vocabulary:

Vividly	having or producing very clear and detailed images in the mind
Accommodating	describes a person who is eager or willing to help other people
Assure	to tell someone that something will definitely happen or is definitely true, especially in order to remove doubt about it
Coolheaded	always staying calm in difficult situations

Idioms and Expressions:

Go ballistic	to become extremely angry
Safe and sound	completely safe and without injury or damage
Go wrong	used when a problem happens and causes the failure of something such as a relationship or a business

Useful Expressions

➤ I can still vividly remember my worst baggage **handling** experience in a flight from Incheon to Los Angeles.

❖ **Handling:** the management or movement of goods

☆ A special licence is required for the manufacture or *handling* of any dangerous chemical.

☆ Their company has a sophisticated cargo *handling* and distribution network.

➤ I almost **went ballistic** when I learned my luggage was **nowhere in sight**.

❖ **Go ballistic:** to become extremely angry

☆ Our boss *went ballistic* when he saw my colleague's expense report of his past business trip.

☆ It took almost an hour to get our food, and Mike almost *went ballistic* when they brought him the wrong thing.

❖ **Nowhere in sight:** impossible to see/find

☆ The children were *nowhere in sight*.

☆ The papers were *nowhere in sight*.

➤ He assured me that I'll **get it back** immediately

❖ **Get something back:** to be given something again that you had before

☆ He went next door to *get his ball back*.

☆ Don't lend him money, you'll never *get it back*.

➤ Luckily, I got back my luggage **safe and sound** three days after we reported its loss.

❖ **Safe and sound:** completely safe and without injury or damage

☆ It was a rough trip, but we got there *safe and sound*.

☆ After several days of searching for them, the hikers were found *safe and sound*.

☆ The package was delivered *safe and sound* despite the terrible weather.

➤ I learned that unexpected things really happen on trips so we have to secure everything and be **coolheaded** when things go wrong.

❖ **Coolheaded:** always staying calm in difficult situations

☆ The project failed. I don't know what *went wrong*.

☆ I'm afraid that everything will *go wrong*.

☆ Where did I *go wrong* with raising my children?

Points of Discussion

- 1) Have you ever gotten lost while traveling? What did you do?
- 2) What is your worst travel experience? Give me as much detail as possible.

We are used to seeing adjectives being placed before nouns. This is known as the *modifier* or *attributive* position.

- ☆ We had a really **good** experience during the flight.
☆ The travel and tours company took care of our **entire** trip in the United States.

Also, generally an adverb rather than an adjective will come directly after a verb because the adverb is describing the verb.

- ☆ She spoke **softly**.

In this example, the verb *spoke* is followed by the adverb *softly*. This adverb describes the verb *spoke*.

Take a look at these sentences:

- ☆ I almost *went ballistic* when I learned my luggage was nowhere in sight.
☆ We have to be coolheaded when things *go wrong*.

As you can see, the verb *go* and *went* are followed by the adjectives “ballistic” and “wrong.” The verb “go” used in the sentences above is a kind of stative verb. These verbs, which join adjectives to their subjects, describe the state of something or someone or a change of state. These are examples of stative verbs:

Appear	Be	Become	Feel	Get	Go
Grow	Keep	Look	Remain	Seem	Smell
Sound	Stay	Taste	Turn		

- ☆ Because she had to wait, she *became impatient*.
☆ The examination did not *seem difficult*.
☆ Your friend *looks nice*.
☆ This milk *tastes sour*.

You should be sure to use an adjective rather than an adverb after a stative verb. Be careful, however, because the adjective that goes with the linking verb does not always directly follow the linking verb.



☆ He **seems** unusually *nice*.

In this example, the adjective *nice*, which describes the subject *he*, is itself described by the adverb *unusually*. From this example, you should notice that it is possible to have an adverb directly after a linking verb, but only if the adverb describes an adjective that follows.

Take a look at these commonly committed errors:

Incorrect	Correct
Janet seemed sadly .	Janet seemed sad .
The cake tastes well .	The cake tastes good
The train is slowly .	The train is slow .

The following chart will guide you:

Subject	Regular verb	Adverb	<i>The adverb describes the verb.</i>
Subject	Linking verb	Adjective	<i>The adjective describes the subject.</i>
Subject	Linking verb	Adverb	<i>It is possible for a linking verb to be followed by an adverb and an adjective. The adverb describes the adjective and the adjective describes the subject.</i>

As you have learned from the previous chapter, the verbs listed above are not always as stative verbs.

☆ Andy **grew angry**.

Angry describes Sally. In this sentence, “to grow” is being used as a linking verb meaning “to become.”

☆ The plant **grew quickly**.

Quickly does not describe the plant. It describes the manner in which it grows. In this sentence, “to grow” is not being used as a linking verb.

Topic 5

Have you ever gone camping? How many times do you go camping in a year? When and where do like to go camping? Please tell me about the most memorable camping trip you've ever gone on.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Expression of interest on camping
Body	Frequency of camping out
	Preferred time of the year and location to camp
	Details on the most memorable camping trip
Conclusion	Perception on the recent camping experience

Yes. I love camping, especially beach camping. In fact, my friends and I *camped out* two months ago in Muuido. That was the best camping trip I had because for the first time, I was with my two best friends from college. It was a **chilly** October, and the crowd was pretty big. We strolled around the beach front, hiked the mountain and rode horses. The most **exhilarating** part was when we tried to catch fish with our own hands. They set up a net out in the ocean, and when the **tide** went out, the fish didn't go with it. It was a lot of fun, and a lot of people **partook** in that event. After that, we **pitched** our own tent. **Actually**, there were beach huts, but they cost a **whopping** 30,000 won a night. We made a **campfire** and spent hours playing cards, drinking some beer, and sharing stories. We really *had the time of our lives*.

Vocabulary:

Chilly	cold
Stroll	to walk without hurrying, often for pleasure
Exhilarating	making you feel very excited and happy
Tide	the regular rising and falling of the level of the sea
Partake	to become involved with or take part in something
Pitch	to put up a tent and fix it into position
Whopping	extremely large
Campfire	a fire built outside by people who are camping

Idioms and Expressions:

Camp out	to live out of doors temporarily in a tent or camping vehicle, as on a vacation or special camping trip
Time of someone's life	having a good time

Useful Expressions

- My friends and I **camped out** two months ago in Muuido.
❖ **Camp out:** to live out of doors temporarily in a tent or camping vehicle, as on a vacation or special camping trip

☆ I love to *camp out* in the winter.
☆ When I was in high school, during the summer we would *camp out* at the lake.

- It was a lot of fun, and a lot of people **partook** in that event.
❖ **Partake:** to become involved with or take part in something

☆ She was happy to *partake* in the festivities
☆ Retailers who *partake* in the campaign should place a sticker in their window.

- **Actually**, there are beach huts, but they cost a **whopping** 30,000 won a night.
❖ **Actually:** used as a sentence modifier to add slight emphasis

☆ *Actually*, we all help clear up after a meal.
☆ *Actually*, I haven't seen the film.
☆ I'm not all that surprised *actually*.

- ❖ **Whopping:** extremely large
☆ Our newly-promoted manager has a *whopping* 35% pay rise.
☆ Sales grew last year by a *whopping* 78%.

- We really **had the time of our lives**.
❖ **Time of someone's life:** having a good time

☆ We're going to *have the time of our lives* this summer, so cheer up!
☆ Our children *had the time of their lives* at Hong Kong Disneyland.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What things do you usually bring when you go camping? What do you use them for?
- 2) You might have encountered difficulties when you went camping. What were they? What did you do to solve the problem? Tell me about your experience with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

Pretty is also a term to say that someone or something is good-looking, cute, etc. However, here, we use it as a term to say “**somewhat**” or “**so-so**”.

The crowd was pretty big.

In this sentence, *pretty* is used to say that the crowd is somewhat big.

Other examples:

- ☆ He's **pretty** smart. I think he'll catch on **pretty** fast.
- ☆ I'm **pretty much** sure I'm going to take the job, but I'll make my final decision tomorrow.

HOW IS PRETTY DIFFERENT FROM QUITE, FAIRLY, AND RATHER?

➤ **Quite and pretty are very similar in meaning:**

- ☆ You'll need a coat when you go out. It's **quite cold** / **pretty cold**. (= less than 'very cold', but more than 'a little cold')
- ☆ I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's **quite famous** / **pretty famous**.

Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

You can also use **quite** (but not *pretty*) in the following ways:

1) **quite a/an + noun (without an adjective)**

- ☆ I didn't expect to see them. It was *quite a surprise*. (quite a big surprise)

2) **quite a lot (of ...):**

- ☆ There were *quite a lot of people* at the meeting.

3) **quite + verb, especially like and enjoy:**

- ☆ I *quite like* tennis, but it's not my favorite sport.

➤ **Rather is similar to *quite* and *pretty*. We often use rather for negative ideas:**

- ☆ The weather isn't so good. It is *rather* cloudy.
- ☆ Paul is *rather* shy. He doesn't talk very much.

Quite and **pretty** are also possible in these examples.

When we use **rather** for positive ideas (good/nice etc.), It means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly':

- ☆ These oranges are *rather good*. Where did you get them?

➤ **Fairly** is weaker than **quite/rather/pretty**. For example, if something is *fairly good*, it is not very good and it could be better:

- ☆ My room is *fairly big*, but I'd prefer a bigger one.
- ☆ We see each other *fairly often*, but not as often as we used to.

Topic 6

You indicated that you go on business trips domestically. Tell me where you usually go and what you do on those trips.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Brief description of speaker's domestic business trips
Body	Usual destination/s
	Activities done during the trips
Conclusion	Benefits/Advantages derived from the trips
Conclusion	Overall view on domestic business trips

As a sales manager of one of the biggest steel companies in Korea, I would say that the best thing about my career is the trips I get to take **whether** it is attending conferences away from home **or** visiting clients across the country. I am in charge of the company's domestic sales and services. I go to Busan once a week to meet up with six of our company's most important local clients. They are all *engaged in* ship building and we provide them with products **essential** to their operation like steel plates and hot-rolled steels. I regularly visit and conduct **exploratory** dialogues with them *on behalf of* my company. **Typically**, I get *first-hand* information about my customer's requirements, feedback about our products and **further** some important company business relationships. Oftentimes, I meet business associates after work, and we either *loosen up* with a late dinner or drink in one of the local restaurants in the city. It is tiring, but my trips there are always **worthwhile**.

Vocabulary:

Essential	necessary; needed
Exploratory	done in order to learn more about something
Further	to develop or make progress in something
Worthwhile	worth the time, money, or effort that you spend on it

Idioms and Expressions:

First-hand	obtained directly from someone who is involved in something
Loosen up	to relax, or to become less serious

Useful Expressions

- The best thing about my career is the trips I get to take **whether** it is attending conferences away from home **or** visiting clients across the country.
- ❖ **Whether ...or:** used to introduce two or more possibilities

- ☆ I'm going, *whether* she likes it *or* not.
- ☆ Someone's got to tell her, *whether* it's you *or* me.
- ☆ Let's face it --you're going to be late *whether* you go by bus *or* train.

- They are all engaged in ship building and we provide them with products essential to their operation like steel plates and hot-rolled steels.
- ❖ **Engage in something:** to take part in a particular activity, especially one that involves competing with other people or talking to them

- ☆ Only 10% of American adults *engage in* regular exercise.
- ☆ The two governments have agreed to *engage in* a comprehensive dialogue to resolve the problem.

- I regularly visit and conduct exploratory dialogues with them **on behalf of** my company.
- ❖ **On behalf of somebody:** instead of someone, or as a representative of someone

- ☆ *On behalf of the entire company*, I would like to thank you for all your work.
- ☆ Unfortunately, George cannot be with us today so I am pleased to accept this award *on his behalf*.

- **Typically**, I get **first-hand** information about my customer's requirements, feedback about our products and **further** some important company business relationships.
- ❖ **Typically:** usually

- ☆ *Typically*, a doctor will see about thirty patients a day.
- ☆ The courses *typically* last for three days.
- ❖ **First-hand:** obtained directly from someone who is involved in something
- ☆ He gave *first-hand* account of the battle.
- ☆ Most of us have *first-hand* experience of teaching.
- ❖ **Further:** to develop or make progress in something
- ☆ The best way of *furthering* your career might be to leave your present job.
- ☆ He dedicated his life to *furthering* the cause of world peace.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Let's talk about the most memorable business trip you had. What happened? Why was it memorable? Give as much detail as possible.
- 2) I'm sorry, but there's a problem that you need to solve. You are supposed to go on a business trip to meet your client, but your flight has been delayed. Call your client and explain the situation. Then give two alternatives to resolve this matter.

Grammar Pointer

We **provide** them with products essential to their operation like steel plates and hot-rolled steels.

The sentence above makes use of the verb *provide*. In this lesson, we are going to discuss the usage of this verb and the complements that come with it. The most common structure that we see is:

Subject	Verb (provide)	Direct Object	With + object	
We	provide	them	with products	essential to their operation like steel plates and hot-rolled steels.

However, other structures are also possible:

	Provide	Noun
The hospital has a commitment	to provide	the best possible medical care.
To provide for someone means to support them by giving them the things they need to live.		

	Verb (provide)	Noun	For + Someone
We are here	to provide	our service	for the public.

Thus, the following sentences are incorrect:

- ✗ Television *provides us* a convenient way to get the latest information.
 - ✓ Television *provides us with* a convenient way to get the latest information.
-
- ✗ She had enough money *to provide him* a basic school education.
 - ✓ She had enough money *to provide him with* a basic school education.

IMPORTANT!

Someone can provide something, but they cannot “provide someone.”

- ✓ Will they provide a car?
- ✗ Will they provide me?

Also note that we don't usually use the preposition TO with *provide*. We can use SUPPLY instead. They are synonymous.

Subject	Verb (Supply)	Object	To +something or someone
Two huge generators	supply	power	to farms in the area.

☆ They were arrested for **supplying drugs to street dealers**.

Like *provide*, *supply* can also come with the preposition WITH. *Equip*, which means *to provide a person, object, or place with the things that they need for a particular purpose*, can also come with this form.

Subject	Verb (supply/equip)	Direct Object	With + object	
We	supply	them	with products	essential to their operation like steel plates and hot-rolled steels.
There is not enough money	to equip	investigators	with the latest computer systems.	

Topic 7

Imagine you are going to call a travel agency to book a hotel for your trip next week. Please prepare three or four questions.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Greetings and name of speaker
Body	State reason for calling
	Ask questions
Conclusion	Closing statement

Good morning Sunshine Travel, this is Mrs. Alicia Park. I would like to *book* a hotel for our family vacation to Thailand. We are leaving Korea on March 9th on the 9:00 am flight and arriving in Thailand at 1:00 in the afternoon. Could you book our family at the Royal Thai Hotel from March 9th until the 13th? Is it possible to get two **adjoining** rooms, one for my husband and myself and the other for my two daughters? How much will they cost for the entire stay? Does the price include free breakfasts during our stay? Could we **check in** and **check out** anytime? Thank you for your help. We look forward to go there, *with bells on*. We will surely tell our friends about your great service. Good-bye.

Vocabulary:

Adjoining	attached to each other
Check in	the act of reporting your presence (as at an airport or a hotel)
Check out	the latest time for vacating a hotel room

Idioms and Expressions:

With bells on	eager; ready to participate; happy to come
----------------------	--

Useful Expressions

- Is it possible to get **adjoining** rooms, one for my husband and myself and the other for my two daughters?

❖ **Adjoining:** attached to each other

☆ She crossed the *adjoining* train cars to reach the bar.

☆ Her office had *adjoining* rooms which were used for her workspace and conferences.

☆ Most family guests request for *adjoining* rooms.

- We look forward to go there, **with bells on**.

❖ **With bells on:** eager; ready to participate; happy to come

☆ Oh, yes! I'll meet you at the restaurant. I'll be there *with bells on*.

☆ All the smiling children were there waiting for me *with bells on their toes*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What are some of the tips that you can give to first time travelers abroad? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 2) If you are not happy with the service that you have experienced in a restaurant or hotel in a foreign country, will you talk to the manager of the restaurant or hotel about your complaint or will you just quiet about it? Why? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Chapter

8

Others

- Topic 1. Unpleasant Incident in a Public Place
 - Topic 2. Changes in Culture
 - Topic 3. Financial Portfolio
 - Topic 4. Losing Something
 - Topic 5. Environment Issues
 - Topic 6. Smart Phone
 - Topic 7. Most Recent and Biggest Issue in Korea
 - Topic 8. Unforgettable Childhood Memory
 - Topic 9. Role Play: Complaining to a Neighbor

Topic 1

Have you ever experienced or witnessed an unpleasant incident in a public place? Describe what happened including when it happened and who were involved?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	When the incident happened
Body	Persons involved in the incident
	What happened during the incident
	Outcome of the incident
Conclusion	Opinion or thoughts about the incident

One of my favorite department stores is the Shinsaegae Department Store in Seoul. It sells very beautiful items. I like going around the store and seeing beautiful clothes, bags and shoes. One day, while I was walking around looking for a new pair of shoes, I saw a middle-aged woman talking to the sales person at the counter. The woman was trying to get a refund for the expensive coat that she said she had purchased a month ago. The sales person told her that she could not **refund** her money because it was over their return policy. The woman kept **insisting** getting her money and their voices seemed louder than usual which then *caught my eye*. Some of the shoppers were moving towards the **commotion**. It was a very embarrassing sight for the sales person because the woman was **unrelenting** and saying that the service that she was getting was not what she expected from a department store. I think that she could have requested for the refund but returning something that you bought and already used is not a good thing.

Vocabulary:

Insisting	to be firm in a demand or course
Refund	To give back, especially money
Commotion	noisy disturbance
Unrelenting	extremely determined

Idioms and Expressions:

Caught my eye	to attract one's attention
----------------------	----------------------------

Useful Expressions

➤ Their voices seemed louder than usual which then **caught my eye**.

❖ **Caught my eye:** to attract one's attention

☆ The beautiful dress displayed in the store's window *caught my eye*.

☆ His handsome face *caught my eye* while I was walking.

➤ It was a very embarrassing sight for the sales person because the woman was **unrelenting**.

❖ **Unrelenting:** extremely determined

☆ She is an *unrelenting* human rights worker.

☆ She will be remembered as an *unrelenting* opponent of racial discrimination.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Has there been a time when you were in a public place and you unintentionally did something wrong which made other people upset or angry? Tell me about your experience with as much detail as possible.
- 2) You are waiting in line to take the bus and somebody cuts his way into the line. Do you call this person's attention or do you just let him be? What would you do in this kind of situation?

Grammar Pointer

You have already learned that **could** is used to show ability in the past or to express that something is possible, but it also has another past form—**could have**.

I think that she **could have requested** for the refund but returning something that you bought and already used is not a good thing.

As you noticed, this form is followed by the past participle of the verb.

could have *gone*
could have *taken*
could have *showed*

When **could** is used in this way, it won't refer to the ability or permission in the past anymore. Instead, it is used to talk about lost opportunities or options that you chose not to do.

- ☆ She *could have helped* me instead of just watching TV.
- ☆ You *could have called* me to let me know.

Other uses:

- We can use 'could have' to talk about something somebody was capable of doing but didn't do.
- ☆ I *could have worked* at an American company, but I chose Samsung.
- ☆ She *could have married* him, but she didn't want to.
- We can use 'could have' to speculate about what has happened.
- ☆ I don't know why Leah left early. She *could have had* some kind of emergency, I suppose.
- ☆ I knew John was at home when you called. He *could have been* asleep or taking a shower, so he couldn't answer.

NOTE: In these instances, the modal verbs may have or might have can also be used.

- We can also use 'could have' to speculate about something that didn't happen.
- ☆ Daniel was lucky. He *could have hurt* himself when he fell, but he's OK.
- ☆ If he'd trained harder, I'm sure he *could have gotten* first place.

COULD HAVE is also confused with other modal verbs SHOULD HAVE and WOULD HAVE. Take a look at this chart, and study their differences.

Modal Verb	Use	Examples
Should have	to express advice on something that has already passed (advice too late). It usually involves regret.	I should have studied a business course instead of history. <i>You regret studying history and the better option was to study a business course.</i>
Would have	used in the main clause of a sentence that contains an if clause. Here, we talk about an imaginary outcome based on the first clause (if clause). This is the third conditional.	If I had known you were coming, I would have prepared a nice dinner. I would have reached my destination earlier if I hadn't lost my way.

IMPORTANT!

When we contract could have, would have and should have, we come up with:

Could've=coulda

Would've=woulda

Should've=shoulda

These are examples of **relaxed pronunciation**. Relaxed pronunciation occurs during spoken English when syllables are slurred together. Note that the relaxed pronunciations are only used when talking and shouldn't be written. Because of the contraction, some make the mistake of saying or writing, “should of,” “would of,” and “could of.” **These are wrong!**

Topic 2

Do you think that your culture has changed over the last decades? Cite an example of a significant change that you think had happened.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Background before the cultural change
Body	Cite the cultural change
	Situational example
Conclusion	Impact/ influence on modern society

I think that our culture has slowly changed over the past decades. A long time ago, Korean women were **relegated** to the home. In fact, their main role in a family was the bearer of **offspring**. They were in charge of keeping the home organized and being a **dutiful** wife to her husband and daughter-in-law to her parents-in-laws. When Korea *opened its doors* to the Western culture, it slowly changed its outlook on women. Nowadays, they are educated with four-year degree courses, work and hold key positions in companies. They now contribute to more than 50% of a family's income and participate in its decision-making. Clearly, families are now able to cope with the recent economic crisis because of the *two-parent working household*.

Vocabulary:

Relegated	given an inferior position, place or condition
Offspring	children of a particular parent
Dutiful	performing the duties expected or required of someone
Household	all the people in a family

Useful Expressions

- A long time ago, Korean women were **relegated** to the home.
❖ **Relegated:** given an inferior position, place or condition

☆ She resigned when she was *relegated* to a desk job.
☆ The story was *relegated* to the middle pages of the paper.

- When Korea **opened its doors** to the Western culture, it slowly changed its outlook on women.
❖ **Open the door to something**
: to allow something new to start

☆ Dad's connections at the hospital have *opened doors* for Richard's colleagues at medical school.
☆ Legalizing marijuana may *open the door* to all kinds of abuse

- Clearly, families are now able to cope with the recent economic crisis because of the **two-parent working household**.
❖ **Two-parent working household:** both husband and wife are working in the family

☆ Ever since my sister went to college, we needed to have a *two-parent working household* to defray her expenses.
☆ My grandparents have strongly opposed a *two-parent working household*.

Related Expression:

- ❖ **Stay-at-home mom/dad:** a parent who stays at home to look after their children instead of working outside the home

Points of Discussion

- 1) Do you have a cultural trait that you wish you could change? Why? Explain your reasons with as much detail as possible.
- 2) What are some advantages and disadvantages of following the traditional culture of your country? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Topic 3

In general terms, could you please describe your financial portfolio? How much do you set aside for expenditures and savings? What will you do if you experience insufficiency in your present financial status?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General financial portfolio status
Body	Details of financial portfolio
	Investments, savings and transactions done
	Actions to resolve financial insufficiency if it will occur
Conclusion	Future plans on financial matters

I think that my current financial **portfolio** is stable. I have some money *on hand*, and I have made some good investments. I am fortunate to have parents who planned for their future well because I was able to finish my university studies through my father's earnings. I want to be like my father so when I started to work, I saved part of my salary into a savings account. I had friends who worked in a **stock brokerage** and they gave me advice on which stocks to buy. When I did well in stocks, I certainly invested some of my money in **time deposits** which earned a **considerable** amount in a short period of time. I would probably buy a house in the **outskirts** of Seoul that I can live in together with my girlfriend when we get married. **Real estate** prices in Seoul are high, so I try to save as much as I can. I buy things which will help make my work and personal life more convenient. I **allocate** about 30-40% of my monthly earnings for my personal **expenditures** and 60% for my savings. Luckily, I have not encountered an instance where I became insufficient in my finances. I always "save for a rainy day," *so to speak*.

Vocabulary:

Portfolio	all the investments that a person or company has made
Stock Brokerage	a company whose main business is the sale and purchase of stocks for customers
Time Deposits	a deposit that can be withdrawn by a customer after giving prior notice or after a period of time has elapsed
Considerable	large or of noticeable importance
Outskirts	the areas that form the edge of a town or city
Real Estate	real property, especially land
Allocate	set apart for a special purpose
Expenditure	money spent by a government, organization, or person

Idioms and Expressions:

On hand	immediately available
Save for a rainy day	keeping money for a time in the future that it might be needed
So to speak	used for showing that you have expressed something in an unusual way

Useful Expressions

- I have some money **on hand**, and I have made some good investments.
❖ **On hand:** immediately available
- ☆ Ms. Sharp will be *on hand* to answer questions later about the film.
- ☆ The two cosmonauts have seven hours of oxygen *on hand*, but the job should take only four hours.

- I **allocate** 30-40% of my monthly earnings for my personal **expenditures** and 60% for my savings.
❖ **Allocate:** set apart for a special purpose
- ☆ She *allocated* enough time to research on the company she saw in the newspaper
- ☆ The money she *allocated* for her trip to the US was not enough.
- ☆ You need to *allocate* more funds for the new project that we are looking into.

- ❖ **Expenditure:** money spent by a government, organization, or person
- ☆ *Expenditure* should ideally not exceed income.
- ☆ The government's annual *expenditure* on arms has been reduced.

- I always “save for a rainy day,” **so to speak**.
❖ **So to speak:** used for showing that you have expressed something in an unusual way
- ☆ Even if New Yorkers obeyed all the rules, New York would still be, *so to speak*, an unruly city.
- ☆ John helps me with my taxes. He's my accountant, *so to speak*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What is the most common investment that an ordinary worker can have in your country?
- 2) Do you think that teaching your children to save is a good idea? Explain your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

When we want to express how sure or certain we feel about an action or event, we use adverbs of certainty.

I **certainly** invested some of my money in time deposits which earned a considerable amount in a short period of time.

In this sentence, the speaker is stating what happened without any doubt.

I would **probably** buy a house in the outskirts of Seoul that I can live in together with my girlfriend when we get married.

In this sentence, the speaker is saying that it is likely that he will buy a house.

There are other common adverbs that may be used to express how sure or certain we feel about an action or event. These are ADVERBS OF CERTAINTY.

Some examples are:
CERTAINLY
DEFINITELY
PROBABLY
UNDOUBTEDLY
SURELY
EXACTLY

There are some rules to remember when using these adverbs

1) Adverbs of certainty go before the main verb but after the verb *to be* :

- ☆ He *definitely* left the house this morning.
- ☆ She was *exactly* seated in this spot when the police arrived.

2) With other auxiliary verbs, these verbs go between the auxiliary verb and the main verb.

- ☆ The Vice President has *certainly* forgotten our company's anniversary party.
- ☆ She will *probably* remember tomorrow.

3) Sometimes these adverbs can be placed at the beginning of the sentence.

- ☆ *Undoubtedly*, the Samsung Galaxy tab is the best in its kind.

CERTAINLY vs. SURELY

When it is used in response to a request or suggestion, **surely** means **certainly** and they can be used interchangeably.

A: Can you give me a hand?
B: Surely!/Certainly!

A: Would you join us for lunch later?
B: Surely! Where are we going to eat?

However, **surely** can also be used to express the speaker's surprise that something is happening. When it is placed at the beginning of the sentence, it means that the speaker thinks that something is true, but is looking for confirmation. **Certainly** CANNOT be used in this way. In this case, you have to give **surely** fairly heavy stress.

- ☆ *Surely*, you don't think that Ray took your watch?
- ☆ You must have heard about the riots, *surely*?

SURELY, CERTAINLY, DEFINITELY

➤ Use **definitely** to say that something is certain to happen or be true.

- ☆ I will *definitely* be back by ten.
 - ✗ I will surely be back by ten.

➤ Use **certainly** to emphasize that something is true.

- ☆ He is *certainly* a great cook.
 - ✗ He is surely a great cook.

Topic 4

Do you have any experience when you lost or broke something valuable? When did it happen and how did things turn out in the end?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Lost or broken valuable object
Body	Description of the lost or broken valuable object
	When and how it happened
Conclusion	Lessons and thoughts about the experience

Last year, I lost a pair of pearl earrings. Each had an off-white colored pearl that was the size of a pea with three small diamonds formed into a triangle in its setting. It was tasteful and elegant when worn. One weekend, I had to attend my mother's 70th birthday party, so I decided to use it. However, when I arrived at the **venue**, my mother suggested that I use the pair of earrings that she brought along. She said it would look good during our picture-taking sessions. I agreed to wear them, so I placed my own pair inside a small **pouch** and kept it inside my bag. We had a great time during the party. The next day, I decided to *tidy up* all the things that I used. I removed all the items inside my bag and noticed that the pouch bag that contained my earrings was missing. I called my sister and my mother and asked them if they found my pouch. I tried to look for it but *to no avail*. I felt sad because the lost pair had a *sentimental value* to it because it was the first jewelry I ever bought when I was new at my first job.

Vocabulary:

Venue	the place of an event or meeting
Pouch	a bag or soft container for a small object or a small amount of something

Idioms and Expressions:

Tidy up	to clean
To no avail	of no help; ineffective
Sentimental value	a value of an article based on the feelings associated to it by a particular person

Useful Expressions

- I tried to look for it but **to no avail**.

❖ **To no avail:** of no help; ineffective

☆ All of his shouting was *to no avail*; no one could hear him.

☆ He was drifting swiftly towards the rapids and his life jacket was *to no avail*.

☆ She tried to reach out to him but *to no avail*. He continued on his path to self-destruction.

- I decided to **tidy up** all the things that I used.

❖ **Tidy up:** to clean

☆ You need to *tidy up* your room before your mom arrives.

☆ *Tidy up* this mess!

☆ Do you think you could *tidy up* your desk?

- I felt sad because the lost pair had a **sentimental value** to it.

❖ **Sentimental value:** a value of an article based on the feelings associated to it by a particular person

☆ We all have items that hold *sentimental value*.

☆ The *sentimental value* of the necklace he gave me far outweighs its material worth.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What are you going to do if you found out that your best friend lost your book? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 2) You are on your way to an interview and someone accidentally bumped into you and spilled coffee all over your shirt. What are you going to do? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

PROPOSE? SUGGEST? RECOMMEND?

My mother **suggested** that I use the pair of earrings that she brought along.

The sentence above uses the verb *suggested*. This verb is often confused with *propose* and *recommend*. Here are some tips to determine the proper verb to use.

PROPOSE and **SUGGEST** mean virtually the same when they are used to mean “to put forward a plan or idea (for someone) to think about.

Thus, this is also correct:

My mother **proposed** that I use the pair of earrings that she brought along.

Other examples:

☆ We have to **propose/suggest** a list of topics to include in our new book.

☆ I **suggest/propose** that you show your manuscript to Barnes & Nobles Publishing

However, they also have notable differences. Let's study the chart below:

PROPOSE	SUGGEST
More formal in nature	informal
<i>The university is proposing to convert the field into a new laboratory.</i>	<i>She suggested to eat at the cafeteria because it is cheaper.</i>
-----	Used to „imply“
	<i>Are you suggesting that our secret has been compromised?</i>
-----	Used to „indicate“
	<i>The sales figures suggest that the company is doing well this year.</i>
Used when making a toast for someone	-----
<i>I propose a toast to our new Chairman of the Board.</i>	
Used for marriage	-----
<i>Are you proposing to me?</i>	

Used to mean “to intend to do something” (intransitive)	-----
<i>He proposes to follow the mountain trail for 5 more miles.</i>	

RECOMMEND

- **Used to advise (strictly with subjunctive) :**

✓ My mother **recommended** that I use the pair of earrings that she brought along.

Other examples:

- ☆ Which product do you *recommend* that I try?
- ☆ What course do you *recommend* that I take?
- ☆ The doctor *recommended* that he lose weight.

➤ Used to praise

- ☆ He *recommended* the Shilla Hotel because it is accessible to the airport.
- ☆ The chef *recommended* the Fois Gras as the main course.

Topic 5

Have you ever thought about environment issues? What do you think are some dangerous situations that may happen because of climate change or pollution? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement on environmental issues
Body	Dangerous climatic situations
	Details and examples about the climatic situation
	Reasons why they're happening
Conclusion	Opinion and resolution

I often think about environmental issues like global warming. Due to this, we are experiencing changes in our weather patterns. In some countries, winters are longer and colder while the summer months are hotter than ever. Recently, there had been some **alarming** news about the dangerous effects of climate change. In Asia, countries like the Philippines and Thailand have been greatly affected by heavy storms killed so many people and destroyed homes and rice fields. Flood waters reach above the roofs of the houses causing the people, especially the children, to be exposed to these heavy rains. Others drown trying to escape the rising waters. Their governments try to prepare their people for these **impending** disasters but still many lives are lost and millions worth of properties are damaged.

Vocabulary:

Alarming	frightening, causing fear or alarm
Impending	Close in time; about to happen

Useful Expressions

- Recently, there had been some **alarming** news about the dangerous effects of climate change.
- ❖ **Alarming:** frightening, causing fear

- ☆ She had some *alarming* news regarding the accident.
- ☆ There has been an *alarming* increase in the number of breast cancer patients admitted this month.
- ☆ The alien species were multiplying at an *alarming* rate.

- Their governments try to prepare their people for these **impending** disasters.
- ❖ **Impending:** close in time; about to happen

- ☆ She was excited to prepare for their *impending* marriage.
- ☆ She organized her staff's schedule due to the *impending* work load from the client.
- ☆ Due to his increasing popularity, there will be an *impending* surge of casting offers.

- Many lives are **lost** and millions worth of properties are damaged.
- ❖ **Lose:** die

- ☆ She *lost* her son in a car accident.
- ☆ Sadly, Jessie *lost* the baby (=her baby died before it was born).

Points of Discussion

- 1) What are the five important things that you will carry during an emergency? Why? Explain your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 2) What natural disasters have you experienced? Describe the damages, and how you were affected by these in detail?

Topic 6

Do you have a smart phone or any of the latest electronic devices? What functions does it have and how do you use them? Describe them as much detail as possible?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Electronic Device
Body	Features of electronic device
	How the speaker uses it
Conclusion	Feelings about the electronic device

I have a Samsung smart phone. It is handy and fits easily into a small bag or purse. It has a **built-in** memory of only 900 MB but a memory card slot is provided which can handle up to 16GB. It has a 5.0-megapixel camera too. When you turn it on, the touch screen display will show colored icons like messages, phone book, music, camera, radio and social networking sites like YouTube, Twitter and Facebook. To begin, all you need to do is to tap on the icon you need. It will show you the files that you have in it. For example, when I tap my music icon, it will open and show my **playlists**. I can add as many songs as my memory card can hold. I can download or share files, music or videos because of its **Wi-Fi** and **Bluetooth** capabilities. It **stores** messages and keeps a **log** of calls I have made, received, or missed. I can **input** my schedules for the day or week, as well as important birthdates and even set alarms to remind me of them. I can **multitask** on my smart phone too. I can listen to music while I write and send e-mails. I can also take pictures and upload them to my Facebook account or send data stored in my phone as attachments for my e-mails. Having a phone like this is truly *heaven-sent*.

Vocabulary:

Built-in	Existing as an essential part of something
Megapixel	smallest component of an image or a picture
Playlist	a list of musical selection
Wi-Fi	a local area network that uses frequency radio signals to transmit and receive data over distances of a few hundred feet
Bluetooth	a short range wireless technology for connecting different devices such as computers and mobile users
Store	find a place for and put away for storage
Log	a record
Input	enter (data or program) into a device; giving one's thoughts or ideas
Multitask	perform more than one task at the same time

Idioms and Expressions:

Heaven-sent	arriving or happening, usually unexpectedly, at the time when they are most useful.
--------------------	---

Useful Expressions

- It has a **built-in** memory of only 900 MB but a memory card slot is provided which can handle up to 16GB.
❖ **Built in** : existing as an essential part of something

- ☆ The bedroom has *built-in* cabinets for ample storage of clothes.
☆ She bought a stroller with a *built-in* visor.
☆ The computer has a *built-in* timer that automatically shuts itself down at 10:00 pm.

- It **stores** messages and keeps a **log** of calls that I have made, received, or missed.
❖ **Store**: find a place for and put away for storage

- ☆ A large amount of data is *stored* in the main frame of our computer.
☆ This new model can *store* up to 1,000 phone numbers.

- ❖ **Log**: a record

- ☆ She kept a *log* of all the visitors that attended the exhibition.
☆ You can access the attendance *log* by typing your pin number.

- I can **input** my schedules for the day or week, important birthdates and even set alarms to remind me of them.
❖ **Input**: enter (data or program) to a device; giving one's thoughts or ideas

- ☆ They were able to *input* all the necessary data into the new system.
☆ You can *input* your data when I am done.
☆ The advertisers will give their *inputs* on the new concept.

- Having a phone like this is truly **heaven-sent**.
 - ❖ **Heaven-sent:** happening or appearing at the right time, as if by divine intervention

- ☆ Finding a gasoline station in this far-flung area is indeed *heaven-sent*.
- ☆ Her being delayed by her brother in taking the 7:00 bus was *heaven-sent* because she would have been one of the victims in the accident involving that bus.
- ☆ For Koreans who are looking for a good restaurant serving reasonably priced food, Songlin Restaurant was *heaven-sent*.

Points for Discussion

- 1) Which of your gadgets do you think is the most important for you? Why? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Do you think modern technology has contributed to making our lives stressful? Why or why not? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 3) Are there any other features that you would like to add to your favorite gadget? Explain your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

A compound is a word which consists of two words acting as a single unit.

I can also take pictures and **upload** them to my Facebook account or send data stored in my phone as attachments for my e-mails.

In the sentence above, we make use of the word **upload**. The adverb *up* and the verb *load* can act together to refer to the act of sending documents or programs from your computer to a larger system using the Internet.

Compound nouns may appear in three forms:

Separated	smart phone, memory card
Hyphenated	heaven-sent
Combined	multitask, networking, megapixel, download, playlist, input

It's important to understand the use of compound words because some of them, whether solid or hyphenated, may have different definitions when the words are compounded, rather than merely used consecutively in a sentence. The compound word, **overall**, takes on a slightly different meaning when written as *over all*. Consider the following two sentences:

☆ **Overall**, I enjoyed the musical.

☆ ‘Ajusshi’ was picked *over all* the others to win the Baeksang Arts Awards.

In the first sentence, **overall** is a transitional word or a summing up word. It could be used as a synonym for words like in conclusion, or to sum. In the second example the words *over all*, imply above all the others or over all the others. Over all means superior to rather than to sum up.

Similarly, compound nouns should not be confused with nouns modified by adjectives, verbs, and other nouns.

☆ I saw a black bird.

☆ I saw a blackbird.

In the first sentence, black modifies bird. I am pertaining to any bird that is black in color. In the second sentence, black is an inseparable part of the noun. In this sense, I am pertaining to a specific type of bird.

STRESS

Compound Nouns	The stress is on the first word of the compound.	eardrum, starfish, network
Compound Verbs	They are stressed on the second word in the compound.	outsmart, overdue, understand
Compound Adjectives	The stress is on the second part of the compound.	Heaven-sent, heart-shaped
Hyphenated Compound Words	Hyphenated compound words often have short words in the middle. Some of these are stressed on the first part of the compound	mother-in-law, good-for-nothings, free-for-all

Topic 7

What do you think is the most recent and biggest issue in your country? Is it related to a political or social issue? How do you think it can be solved?

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Most recent and biggest issue
Body	Relevance to a political/ social problem (if any)
	Further details about the issue
	Thought on measures that should be done to solve the issue
Conclusion	Outlook on the countermeasures' effects

One of the most **controversial** news in Korea is about the **ordinance** on students' rights. *In its entirety*, the ordinance seeks to protect students' rights so that they may live a life of dignity and happiness. However, a provision in this **ordinance** that is **stirring** the most controversy is the prohibition of **corporal** and verbal punishment. Due to this, teachers, as well as parents, feel it will lessen the teachers' authority and will lead to uncontrollable students. The Ministry of Education, Science and Technology has opposed this ordinance since December of last year and has applied for a **suspension** of its implementation. Having been a student myself, I am aware of many cases where students have been punished unreasonably by their teachers leading to embarrassment and in extreme cases, suicide. The goal of this ordinance is **commendable**. However, there must be other provisions which will support the authority of the teachers when students are misbehaving. These countermeasures will prevent the abuse by the students as well as the violation of the rights of the teachers while they perform their jobs.

Vocabulary:

Controversial	Subject to debate or arguments
Ordinance	authoritative rule or law
Stirring	producing strong feelings or excitement in someone
Corporal	physical
Injunction	a judicial act requiring a person/s to do a particular act or refrain from doing a particular act
Suspension	a temporary pause or inactivity
Countermeasure	an action taken to prevent another action from having a harmful effect

Idioms and Expressions:

In its entirety

whole or complete state

Useful Expressions

- **In its entirety**, the ordinance seeks to protect students' rights so that they can live a life of dignity and happiness.
❖ **In its entirety**: whole or complete state

- ☆ The concept of the fashion show was downplayed *in its entirety*.
☆ His life, *in its entirety*, was devoted to medical research.

- However, a provision in this ordinance that is **stirring** the most controversy is the prohibition of **corporal** and verbal **punishment**.

- ❖ **Stirring**: producing strong feelings or excitement in someone

- ☆ Linda delivered a *stirring* speech again. She's such an amazing public speaker.
☆ The movie that we recently watched had a *stirring* effect on our emotions.
❖ **Corporal Punishment**: punishment that involves hitting someone, especially in schools and prisons
☆ *Corporal punishment* was abolished in Britain in 1986.
☆ Korea has been trying to abolish *corporal punishment* in schools.

- These **countermeasures** will prevent the abuse by the students as well as the violation of the rights of the teachers while they perform their jobs.

- ❖ **Countermeasure**: an action taken to prevent another action from having a harmful effect

- ☆ The government has plotted new *countermeasures* against terrorism.
☆ The project aims to develop *countermeasures* for accident reduction.

Points of Discussion

- 1) Do you have an experience wherein you participated in a public forum or debate? What was it about? Describe your experience with as much detail as possible?
- 2) Do you admire a political leader in your country? Who is it? Why do you admire this political leader? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

In Topic 6 of Chapter 6, we learned that there are English words that were not originally English. They have derivation from other languages. Furthermore, the usage of prefixes and suffixes were explained.

In this lesson, we are going to study other English words/prefixes derived from other languages. These were used in the sample answer above.

COUNTER/ CONTRO: AGAINST; OPPOSITE; CONTRASTING	
Words	Meanings
Controversial	<i>Adjective:</i> causing disagreement or discussion
Contrary	<i>Noun:</i> opposite
Contradict	<i>Verb:</i> to disagree with something, especially by saying that the opposite is true
Counterattack	<i>Noun:</i> a return attack <i>Verb:</i> to deliver a return attack or make a return attack against something/someone
Counterclaim	<i>Noun:</i> a claim filed in opposition to another claim, especially in a legal action <i>Verb:</i> to plead an opposing claim or make an opposing claim against

CORP/CORPOR: BODY	
Words	Meanings
Corporal	<i>Adjective:</i> of or relating to the body
Corpse	<i>Noun:</i> a dead body, especially of a human
Corporation	<i>Noun:</i> a large company or group of companies that is controlled together as a single organization

PRO: BEFORE/ FORWARD	
Words	Meanings
Protect	<i>Verb:</i> to defend from attack
Produce	<i>Verb:</i> to bring forth; yield
Proclaim	<i>Verb:</i> to bring before the public; to say publicly or officially that something important is true or exists

SUS/ SUB: BELOW; UNDER; beneath	
Words	Meanings
Suspension	<i>Verb:</i> when someone stops something happening, operating, etc. for a period of time
Suspect	<i>Noun:</i> a person who is under suspicion <i>Verb:</i> imagine to be the case, true or probable
Subject	<i>Noun:</i> one who is under the rule of another or others, especially one who owes allegiance to a government or ruler <i>Verb:</i> being in a position or in circumstances that place one under the power or authority of another or others
Substitute	<i>Noun:</i> one that takes the place of another; a replacement <i>Verb:</i> to take the place of another

☞ Suspension (sus+ pension ☞ from "pend"), Suspect (sus+ spect ☞ from "specere"= look)

Subject (sub + object) Substitute (sus+stitute ☞ from "statute" =stand)

Topic 8

**Do you remember any significant event when you were young?
What was it? Describe it with as much detail as possible.**

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	General statement on significant event
Body	How the event happened
	More details about the significant event
Conclusion	Impact of the significant event to the speaker

I had been learning how to dance ballet since I was about 6 years old. My first experience which led me to this was when I saw a film *clip* of a woman dancing the Swan Lake. That woman was Anna Pavlova, the **prima ballerina** of the Imperial Russian Ballet. My mom realized that I was very interested in ballet. She enrolled me at a children's ballet workshop in our community center and *the rest is history*. I had enrolled in ballet classes in my school until I was in high school. I joined school performances. I then took private lessons at a ballet academy. On my second year of study, we learned to dance the Swan Lake which was a personal favorite. We were going to perform it at the academy's annual show, and I was chosen to be the lead dancer. My teacher told me that it would be my **debut** as a ballet dancer. I was thrilled, so I rehearsed everyday into the night. I watched Anna Pavlova's films over and over to look at how to gracefully **execute** the dance. On the day of the performance, I was so nervous that I could hardly breathe, but I knew I had to *shake off* the feeling. The show was given a *standing ovation* by the audience which made me so happy that people liked the way I danced. It also gave me that **boost** to continue with this wonderful art form, ballet.

Vocabulary:

Prima Ballerina	the most important female dancer in a ballet company
Debut	to appear for the first time in public
Execute	complete successfully
Boost	contribute to the progress or growth of

Idioms and Expressions:

The rest is history	everything that happened since then is well known
Shake off	to lose; to get rid of
Standing ovation	enthusiastic recognition accompanied with loud applause

Useful Expressions

- I saw a film *clip* of a woman dancing the Swan Lake.
❖ **Clip:** a short part of a film, programme, or news story that is shown separately

- ☆ He let us watch *clips* from the new James Bond film.
☆ They showed a *clip* of Robbie Williams being interviewed.

- She enrolled me at a children's ballet workshop in our community center and **the rest is history.**
❖ **The rest is history:** everything that happened since then is well known

- ☆ The Beatles had their first record in 1962 and *the rest is history*.
☆ They met and fell in love at first sight and *the rest is history*.
☆ He started his multi-million dollar business with a handful of people and *the rest is history*.

- I knew I had to *shake off* the feeling.
❖ **Shake off:** to lose; to get rid of

- ☆ I can't seem to *shake off* this cold.
☆ I try to *shake off* my fear of heights.

Other usage:

❖ **Shake off:** to get away from someone or something that will not stop following you

- ☆ He drove through the red lights in an attempt to *shake off* the police car that was chasing him.

Points of Discussion

- 1) What was the happiest time of your life? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Is there something that you regretted doing or not having done? What was it? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

The use of the verbs **See**, **Look**, **Watch** is very specific in most cases, and they are not normally interchangeable as is the case in other languages. It is therefore important to understand the basis of the use of each of these verbs.

I **watched** Anna Pavlova's films.

There might be instances when you hear people say:

☆ I *saw* Won Bin's latest movie at the cinema last week.

In general, we use SEE for public performances and WATCH for television at home.

☆ I *saw* a film clip of a woman dancing the Swan Lake.

☆ Have you *seen* Davichi's new music video on YouTube?

☆ Last night, I stayed home and *watched* some films on TV.

☆ When I don't have anything to do, I download some films and *watch* them on my computer.

WATCH

We use *watch* to look at something carefully, usually at something which is moving. We *watch* the movements and changes.

☆ Did you *watch* the football match yesterday.

☆ The police decided to *watch* the suspected murderer.

SEE

We use see to say that something “comes to our eyes.” It doesn’t necessarily mean that we are paying attention.

☆ Can you *see* the red car over there?

☆ I *saw* you at the bus stop this morning.

LOOK

When we *look at* something we are trying to see what it is – we are paying attention. Note that we can **see** something even if we don’t want to, but we can only **look at** something deliberately.

☆ I watched Anna Pavlova's films over and over to *look at* how to gracefully execute the dance.

☆ *Look at* me in the eye.

Form:

Look + at + object

☆ *Look at* the photo.

When there is no object, there is no preposition.

Topic 9

Now I'll give you a situation to solve. Your neighbor moved upstairs but they make a lot of noise every night. You are going to call them and ask them to be quiet.

Development of Ideas	
Introduction	Greeting
Body	Reason for calling/ Intention
	State request
Conclusion	Closing statement

Hello, may I speak with Jenny? Jenny, this is Sarah. I used to live next to your apartment when you were on the 5th floor. *Sorry to bother you*, but I've noticed that there has been a lot of activity in your house. I called to ask if you could *keep it down* a bit. I try to sleep as early as I can because I need to get up around 4:00 am to get to work across town. I would greatly appreciate it if you could help me in this situation. Thanks. See you around!

Vocabulary:

Bother

to give trouble to; annoy

Idioms and Expressions:

Sorry to bother to apologize for causing trouble

Keep it down To hold at a reduced level

a bit a short time; a small quantity of something

Useful Expressions

➤ **Sorry to bother you**, but I've noticed that there has been a lot of activity in your house.

❖ **Bother**: to give trouble; to annoy

☆ The secretary was *sorry to bother* her boss in the middle of his meeting.

☆ She was *sorry to bother* her teammates during their rest period.

➤ I called to ask if you could **keep it down** a bit.

❖ **Keep it down**: to hold at a reduced level

☆ The boy's mother asked him to *keep the volume down*.

☆ *Keep your voice down!*

☆ The baby is sleeping so *keep the music down*.

Points of Discussion

- 1) How do you welcome new neighbors in your apartment building? Do you have a get-together party or do you just ignore them? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.
- 2) Are you involved with any community project? If you are, what kind of project is it? If you are not, why are you not involved? Describe your answer with as much detail as possible.

Grammar Pointer

Sorry to bother you, but I“ve noticed that there has been a lot of activity in your house. I called to ask if you could keep it down a bit.

In the sentence above, “sorry” is used to express an apology for interrupting, not for a mistake done. The speaker, Sarah, is also expressing her annoyance, and requests an action in the following sentence. Sarah is actually complaining, but in a very calm and polite way.

As you can see, saying sorry doesn“t necessarily mean that you made a mistake. Consider the following sentences:

- ☆ *I'm sorry* to hear about your car accident.
- ☆ *I feel sorry* for people with no homes.
- ☆ You“re stuck with a complainer and a sulk. *I feel sorry* for you.

The sentences above expresses **regret**, you are saying sorry for something that happened which you would prefer had not happened. In this case, you are not apologizing, but you are sharing your regret—your sadness about something.

If you would like to apologize for something that **you have done wrong**, or for doing something that **made someone upset**, the following phrases are appropriate:

INFORMAL	
Sorry.	<i>Sorry, I didn't mean to wake you up.</i> This is very impolite. We usually use this apologize to someone you are really close to.
I'm (so/very/really, terribly) sorry	<i>I'm terribly sorry that I was late for the presentation.</i> We use 'so', 'very', „really“ and 'terribly' to make the meaning stronger. 'Terribly' is the strongest.
I'm sorry to say/I'm afraid	<i>They won't pass the exam, I'm sorry to say.</i> <i>I'm afraid we lost the game tonight.</i> We use this to introduce bad news or an upsetting statement to someone.
It was all my fault/ I'll never do it again	<i>Sorry. It was all my fault because I wasn't looking.</i> <i>I shouldn't have done that. Sorry, I'll never do it again.</i> We use this to take responsibility of what happened.
Excuse me	<i>Oh, excuse me, I didn't see you standing there.</i> We use this when apologizing for something you did accidentally

FORMAL	
Apologize	<i>I apologize for my late arrival.</i> <i>Apologize</i> is the formal counterpart of <i>sorry</i> .
I beg your pardon/Pardon me	<i>I beg your pardon, I didn't mean to interrupt.</i> A more formal way of apologizing for something you did accidentally.
My apologies	<i>My apologies if I have misunderstood your intentions.</i> A very formal way of saying that you are sorry for something.
I regret to inform	<i>I regret to inform you that Mr. Smith will not come today.</i> This is the formal counterpart of the expression, "I'm sorry to say".
Please accept my/our (sincerest) apologies	<i>Please accept our sincerest apologies for the inconvenience this matter has given you.</i> This phrase is very formal and makes the apology very strong.
I/We owe you an apology	<i>We've discovered who the thief was, and it seems we owe you an apology.</i> This is used when you realize you have treated someone badly, e.g. by blaming

Remember, to *apologize* is to admit that you are at fault—that **you made a mistake** and that **you made someone upset**. To be *sorry* is used to express both **regret** and a **mistake**.